MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 22

The Eneit

Heinrich von Veldeke

Die Êneide

The Eneit

Part One: Dido and the Landing in Italy

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

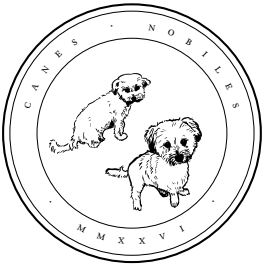


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 22 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Heinrich von Veldeke, herausgegeben von Ludwig Ettmüller, Dichtungen des deutschen Mittelalters 8 (Leipzig: G. J. Göschen, 1852), verses 1 to 6837

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Otto Behaghel numbers them (1882), every fifth verse in the outer margin; Ettmüller counts his lines by the page. A verse Ettmüller prints that Behaghel does not count is lettered after the verse before it, and a number Behaghel gives to a line Ettmüller does not print is passed over. The paragraphs are Ettmüller's, each opened in his text by a bold initial; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Fall of Troy 7
II · Juno's Storm, and Dido's Carthage 16
III · The Envoys Before Dido 31
IV · Aeneas at Dido's Court 47
V · Aeneas Tells of the Fall of Troy 64
VI · Dido's Sleepless Night 83
VII · Dido Confides in Anna 97
VIII · The Hunt Prepared 107
IX · The Storm in the Forest 119
X · Aeneas Is Bidden Away 129

XI · Aeneas Sails, and Dido Dies 146
XII · Anchises's Summons 165
XIII · The Sibyl and the Branch 175
XIV · The Descent, and Charon 187
XV · Cerberus, and the Fields of Mourning 201
XVI · Tartarus 217
XVII · Anchises in Elysium 228
XVIII · The Landing in Italy 240
XIX · Latinus's Answer, and Alba Founded 252
XX · The Queen and Turnus 269
XXI · Ascanius and the Tame Stag 288
XXII · Turnus Accuses Aeneas 306
XXIII · Turnus's Allies, and Camilla 323
XXIV · Turnus's Council of War 340
XXV · Vulcan Forges Aeneas's Arms 355
XXVI · Aeneas Leaves for Pallanteum 375
XXVII · Evander and Pallas 385
XXVIII · The First Assault on Montalbane 399
XXIX · Nisus and Euryalus 415

The Fall of Troy

I

Menelaus besieges Troy for Paris's theft of his wife and will not leave until he wins it. The city falls, Priam and four of his sons are slain, and Helen is given back. Aeneas, a duke of Venus's line, learns from the gods that he must save himself and sail for Italy. His friends choose flight over death, and he leaves with his goods in twenty ships, his old father carried and his son led by the hand; his wife is lost before he reaches the ships.

Ir habet wol vernomen daz,
You have well heard that,

wi der kunich Menelaus besaz
how the king Menelaus besieged

Troien die rîchen
Troy the rich

vil gewaldechlîchen,
very mightily,

do er sie zefûren wolde
when he it destroy would

dorch Pârises scholde,
for Paris's fault,

der im sîn wîb hete genomen.
who from-him his woman had taken.

niht enwolder dannen komen,
not would-he thence come,

ê danne er Troien gewan.
ere than he Troy won.

manech wîb unde man
many-a woman and man

beleib dâ jâmerlîche tôt.
remained there wretchedly dead.

dâ was vile michel nôt,
there was very great distress,

dô man die borch sach vallen,
when one the castle saw fall,

under den lûten allen,
among the people all,

der vile lutzel dâ genas.
of-whom very few there survived.

manech rîche palas
many-a rich palace

wart dâ zefûret
was there destroyed

von marmore gemûret
of marble walled

unde manech gût hûs.
and many-a good house.

dô wart der kunich Prîamûs
then was the king Priam

dar inne erslagen ze tôde:
there within slain to death:

aleine storber nôde,
although died-he unwillingly,

her nam sîn ende schiere
he took his end swiftly

und sîner sune viere:
and of-his sons four:

ez mûste dâ alsô wesen,
it must there so be,

dâ ne mohte nieman genesen
there — might no-one survive

der gesunden noch der siechen,
of-the healthy nor of-the sick,

sint daz die Criechen
since that the Greeks

in die borch quâmen.
into the castle came.

Elenam si nâmen
Helen they took

und gâben si Menelâô wider
and gave her to-Menelaus back

und brâchen Troien dernider.
and broke Troy down.

In der borch an einem ende,
In the castle at one end,

entgegen dem sundern winde,
toward the south wind,

dâ wonete ein rîche man,
there dwelt a rich man,

den ich genennen wole kan:
whom I name well can:

daz was der hêre Ênêas,
that was the lord Aeneas,

der dâ herzoge was.
who there duke was.

des kuneges tohter was sîn wîb
the king's daughter was his woman

der generete sînen lîb.
who saved his body.

Virgilîûs der mâre,
Virgil the famous,

der saget uns, daz her wâre
he tells us, that he were

von der gote geslehte
of the gods' lineage

geboren mit rehte,
born by right,

und Vênûs diu gotinne,
and Venus the goddess,

diu frowe is uber die minne,
the lady is over the love,

wâre sîn mûder
were his mother

und Cupidô sîn brûder.
and Cupid his brother.

Dô ez alsô quam,
When it so came,

daz Menelaus den sige nam
that Menelaus the victory took

unde Troien zebrach
and Troy broke

unde sîn leit gerach,
and his sorrow avenged,

daz ime dâ getân was,
that to-him there done was,

dô hete der hêre Ênêas
then had the lord Aeneas

von den goten vernomen,
from the gods heard,

daz her dannen solde komen
that he thence should come

unde den lîb vor in bewaren
and the body before them guard

und uber mere solde varen
and over sea should fare

ze Italjen in daz lant.
to Italy into the land.

daz weste wol der wîgant,
that knew well the warrior,

dannen Dardanûs geboren was.
whence Dardanus born was.

dô gesach Ênêas
then saw Aeneas

die borch brinnen balde.
the castle burn quickly.

Dardanûs der alde
Dardanus the old

der was der êrste man,
he was the first man,

der Troien stiften began.
who Troy to-found began.

Ênêas der hêre
Aeneas the lord

der gedahte im vile sêre,
he thought to-himself very sorely,

dô ime diu sorge zû quam.
when to-him the care to came.

sîne frunt her zû im nam,
his friends he to him took,

sîne mâge und sîne man,
his kinsmen and his men,

mit in her sprâchen began
with them he to-speak began

der herzoge Ênêas,
the duke Aeneas,

her sagete in daz dâ wâr was
he told them what there true was

unde waz im was enboten
and what to-him was announced

und gewîssaget von den goten,
and foretold by the gods,

daz er sich niht solde erweren
that he himself not should defend

und sînen lîb solde generen:
and his body should save:

daz sageter sînen holden,
that told-he his liegemen,

die sich dâ weren wolden,
who themselves there defend would,

daz si alle tôt mûsten sîn.
that they all dead must be.

her sprach ‚lieben frunt mîn,
he spoke ‚dear friends mine,

swie diu angest sî getân,
however the fear be made,

doch newil ich niht gân
yet will I not go

ûz ûwer aller râte
out-of of-you all counsel

deweder frû noch spâte.
neither early nor late.

nu saget mir ûwern mût,
now say to-me your mind,

waz ûh dar umbe dunke gût,
what to-you there about seem good,

nâch diu und ir ez habet vernomen,
after that and you it have heard,

ob wir lebende wellen hinnen komen
whether we living will hence come

oder wider kêren
or back turn

und sterben mit êren
and die with honor

und unser frunt rechen.
and our friends avenge.

swaz ir wellet sprechen,
whatever you will speak,

daz û allen lieb sî,
that to-you all dear be,

des ir mir getorret stân bî,
in-that you to-me dare stand by,

des helfe ich û, ob ich mach.‘
in-that help I to-you, if I may.‘

ir iegelîcher des erschrach,
of-them each at-that took-fright,

do ez an daz sterben solde gân:
when it to the dying should go:

dô dûhte sie daz baz getân,
then seemed to-them that better done,

daz sie daz lant rûmden
that they the land should-leave

denn sie sich dâ versûmden
than they themselves there should-neglect

und rûm dâ erworben,
and fame there won,

dâ si umbe erstorben.
where they about died.

Do gesach der hêre Ênêas,
Then saw the lord Aeneas,

daz im vile leit was,
that to-him very grievous was,

daz man daz lant wûste
that one the land laid-waste

und er Troien rûmen mûste
and he Troy leave must

mit den sînen mannen.
with the his men.

her wonete verre dannen,
he dwelt far thence,

dâ die Criechen branden,
where the Greeks burned,

her ne mohtez niht geanden:
he — might-it not avenge:

ez was zû der wîle
it was at the time

wol uber zehen mîle.
well over ten miles.

der schade nâhet im harde;
the harm neared to-him hard;

iedoch schûf er die warde,
yet made he the watch,

daz her al sîn gût nam
that he all his goods took

und dâ mite enwech quam
and there with away came

swar sô im geviele.
whither so to-him should-please.

dô vant her zwênzich kiele
then found he twenty keels

wol bereit und gespîset;
well readied and victualed;

die worden ime gewîset
they were to-him shown

sîme hûse gnûch nâ.
to-his house enough near.

die Criechen liezen sie dâ,
the Greeks left them there,

die si dar heten braht,
who them thither had brought,

und wâren hin dâ man dâ vaht.
and were thither where one there fought.

sone mohte her getûn baz,
so-not might he do better,

her nam sîn gût und schûf daz
he took his goods and brought-about that

siz hin zen schiffen fûrden.
they-it thither to-the ships carried.

vaste sie sich rûrden
fast they themselves stirred

her und sîne holden,
he and his liegemen,

die mit im varen scholden.
who with him fare should.

sînen vater hiez er danne tragen:
his father bade he then carry:

der was sô komen ze sînen tagen,
he was so come to his days,

daz er niht mohte gân.
that he not might walk.

daz het ime daz alder getân.
that had to-him the age done.

sînen sun leiter an sîner hant.
his son led-he by his hand.

dar umbe rûmde her daz lant,
there about left he the land,

daz her generete sînen lîb:
that he should-save his body:

dâ verlôs her sîn wîb,
there lost he his woman,

êr her ze schiffe quam.
ere he to ship came.

ich ne weiz wer sime nam.
I not know who her-from-to-him took.

Juno's Storm, and Dido's Carthage

II

Juno, angry over the golden apple Paris gave Venus, drives Aeneas's fleet over the sea for seven years and sinks one ship in a storm. When the sea calms he sights Libya and lands with seven of his twenty ships. He sends twenty knights under Ylionix to learn what land it is, and they find Carthage. The poet tells how Dido, driven from Tyre after her brother killed her husband Sychaeus, bought as much land as a cowhide would cover, cut it into a thong, and built a mighty city.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

ûz der borch komen was,
out-of the castle come was,

dô hete der helt milde
then had the hero generous

wol drû tûsent schilde
well three thousand shields

unde ritter alsô vile;
and knights as many;

dô gieng ez ûzer deme spile.
then went it out-of the game.

dô sie zen schiffen quâmen,
when they to-the ships came,

ir anker si dô nâmen
their anchors they then took

und zogen si ûz dem sande.
and drew them out-of the sand.

der wint quam von dem lande
the wind came from the land

und treib si verre ûf daz mere.
and drove them far onto the sea.

dô was daz Ênêases here
then was the Aeneas's host

sumelîchez vil frô.
in-part very glad.

dô was diu gotinne Jûnô
then was the goddess Juno

Ênêase vil gehaz
to-Aeneas very hostile

unde tetez umbe daz,
and did-it about that,

daz sin minnern wolde
that she-him lessen would

dorch den apphel von golde,
for the apple of gold,

den Pâris froun Vênûse gab.
which Paris to-lady Venus gave.

dâ quam al der nît ab,
there came all the envy from,

daz Troie wart zebrochen.
that Troy was broken.

dâ mit wart daz gerochen,
there with was that avenged,

daz saget uns Virgilîûs,
that tells us Virgil,

des gehalf frou Vênûs,
in-that helped lady Venus,

daz Pâris Elenam nam:
that Paris Helen took:

dâ grôz ubel vone quam.
there great evil from came.

Dô intgalt Ênêas,
Then paid-for Aeneas,

daz ime frouwe Jûnô was
that to-him lady Juno was

ungenâdich unde gram.
ungracious and hostile.

dô her ûf daz mere quam
when he onto the sea came

und dannen varen solde,
and thence fare should,

swar sô her hin wolde,
whither so he thither would,

sie was im ie widere
she was to-him ever against

mit starkem ungewidere.
with strong foul-weather.

diu bûch sagent uns vor wâr,
the books tell us for true,

daz sin volle siben jâr
that she-him full seven years

ûf dem mere errete
on the sea made-stray

und von dem lande verrete,
and from the land kept-far,

dâ her gerne wâre.
where he gladly were.

ez was ir ummâre,
it was to-her indifferent,

des leider grôze quâle.
of-that sadly great torment.

si erscheinde im zeinem mâle
she showed to-him at-one time

unsanfte ire maht
ungently her might

drî tage und drî naht.
three days and three nights.

si tet im grôzen tormint,
she did to-him great torment,

beide storm unde wint,
both storm and wind,

mit regene und mit hagele.
with rain and with hail.

ez brasten ire nagele
it burst their nails

an ir schiffen vaste,
on their ships fast,

ir segele unde ir maste,
their sails and their masts,

ir rûder und ôch ir rahen:
their oars and also their yards:

si wolde se al ze tôde slahen
she would them all to death strike

diu gotinne Jûnô.
the goddess Juno.

dô quam ez alsô,
then came it so,

daz der schiffe einez versank
that of-the ships one sank

unde daz volc ertrank
and the folk drowned

allez daz dar inne was.
all that there in was.

dô clagete Ênêas,
then lamented Aeneas,

daz her ie dare quam,
that he ever thither came,

daz her sîn ende niht ennam
that he his end not took

zû Troie mit êren
at Troy with honor

mit Pârise sime heren.
with Paris his lord.

her sprach, her woldez iemer clagen,
he spoke, he would-it ever lament,

daz er niht enwart erslagen
that he not was slain

bî dem kunege Prîamô.
beside the king Priam.

der stormwint zerteilde dô
the storm-wind scattered then

diu schif vile wîten.
the ships very wide.

alsô mûstens rîten,
so must-they drift,

wan sie sich vor den unden
for they themselves before the waves

berihten niene kunden.
steer not-at-all could.

Dô was dâ en sorgen
Then was there in cares

den âbent und den morgen
the evening and the morning

vile manich mûder barn.
very many-a mother's child.

alsô mûsten sie varn
so must they fare

unze an den vierden tach,
until to the fourth day,

daz der wint dô gelach
that the wind then lay-down

und die starken unden
and the strong waves

stillen begunden,
to-still began,

und geslihtet wart der sê,
and smoothed was the sea,

der sô rûch was ê,
which so rough was before,

unde hûb sich der tach,
and raised itself the day,

dô daz Ênêas gesach,
when that Aeneas saw,

daz sich daz mere slihte,
that itself the sea smoothed,

sîn houbet her ûf rihte
his head he up raised

der wol gelobete wîgant:
the well praised warrior:

her gesach von Libîâ daz lant
he saw of Libya the land

und die berge vile hô.
and the mountains very high.

des was sîn herze vil vrô,
of-that was his heart very glad,

daz in Fortûnâ sus erlôste.
that him Fortune thus released.

sîne lûte her dô trôste,
his people he then comforted,

daz sie sich wol gehielden
that they themselves well held

und rûrden unde schielden,
and rowed and pushed,

daz si ze lande quâmen
that they to land came

und die habe dâ nâmen
and the haven there took

alsolich sô si wâre.
such as it were.

daz was ein nûwe mâre,
that was a new tale,

daz si gerne hôrden.
that they gladly heard.

si sprungen zû den borden,
they sprang to the gunwales,

si stunden unde rûrden,
they stood and rowed,

manlîche sie fûrden
manfully they plied

ir arme und ir hande,
their arms and their hands,

unz si quâmen ze lande.
until they came to land.

Dô si daz lant geviengen
When they the land gained

und ûz den schiffen giengen
and out-of the ships went

und an die erde quâmen,
and onto the earth came,

daz gemach sie dâ nâmen
the ease they there took

alsolich sô siz funden.
such as they-it found.

dô sî dô begunden
then they then began

ir schif zellen
their ships to-count

die ellenden gesellen,
the exiled comrades,

sô ich die rede hân vernomen,
as I the tale have heard,

dô was der schiffe dar komen
then was of-the ships thither come

sibeniu unde niht mê,
seven and not more,

der dâ zwênzich wâren ê,
of-which there twenty were before,

dô si von Troie fûren
when they from Troy fared

ensament von der mûren.
together from the wall.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

in die habe komen was
into the haven come was

lutzil gûtes her dâ vant.
little of-goods he there found.

dô sander boten in diu lant
then sent-he messengers into the lands

zwênzich ritter gûte
twenty knights good

mit geinôtem mûte,
with united spirit,

daz si versûchten mâre
that they should-seek tidings

waz landes daz wâre,
what of-land that were,

daz siz gesagen kunden,
that they-it tell could,

obe si iender funden
whether they anywhere found

kouf unde spîse.
trade and food.

Ylîonix der wîse
Ylionix the wise

der meisterde die schare,
he led the troop,

diu dâ hin solde varen.
which there thither should fare.

Dô die helide balde
When the heroes bold

gefûren after walde
fared along forest

alle wîle erre,
all while astray,

dô quâmen si alsô verre,
then came they so far,

da si eine strâzen funden.
that they a road found.

zû den selben stunden
at the same hours

wolden si daz niht lâzen
would they that not leave

sine volgeten der strâzen,
unless-they followed the road,

unze si ûze quâmen.
until they out came.

dâ si doch vernâmen
there they yet heard

ein vil liebez mâre.
a very welcome tale.

si gesâgen offenbâre
they saw openly

eine grôzę borch stân
a great castle stand

vast unde wolgetân.
firm and well-made.

daz was Kartâgô,
that was Carthage,

die diu frouwe Dîdô
which the lady Dido

bûwete unde stihte;
built and founded;

daz lant sie berihte
the land she ruled

sô iz frouwen wol gezam.
as it to-a-lady well befitted.

ich sage û wie si dare quam,
I tell to-you how she thither came,

alsô von ir is geschriben:
as of her is written:

si wart von Tyre vertriben.
she was from Tyre driven.

Sie was in daz lant komen,
She was into the land come,

als ich ez wol habe vernomen
as I it well have heard

und ich û wol gesagen kan.
and I to-you well tell can.

Sichêus hiez ir man,
Sychaeus was-called her man,

den ir brûder irslûch.
whom her brother slew.

her tet ir leides genûch
he did to-her of-sorrow enough

âne alle ir scholde,
without all her fault,

wande er haben wolde
for he have would

daz lant, daz ime gar beleib,
the land, that to-him wholly remained,

dô her die swester vertreib.
when he the sister drove-out.

Dô ir der brûder wart gehat,
When to-her the brother became hostile,

dô nam si michelen schat
then took she great treasure

unde ein lutzilez here
and a little host

und fûr mit schiffen uber mere
and fared with ships over sea

und quam ze Libîâ in daz lant
and came to Libya into the land

zû dem hêren den si dâ vant,
to the lord whom she there found,

der des landes dâ gewielt
who of-the land there ruled

unde die hêrschaft hielt.
and the lordship held.

listichlîchen sie in bat;
cunningly she him asked;

daz er ir verkoufte an einer stat
that he to-her should-sell in a place

eine wênege rîcheit:
a small domain:

sînes landes alsô breit,
of-his land as broad,

dâ ez ir ze nemenne tohte,
there it to-her to take served,

als vil sô si belegen mohte
as much as she cover might

mit einer wênegen rindes hût.
with a small cow's hide.

in den zîten was daz lût
in the times was the people

ein teil alwâre.
a part simple.

ez was im ummâre:
it was to-him indifferent:

der frouwen herz erloufte,
to-the lady he-it granted,

daz lant her ir verkoufte.
the land he to-her sold.

Dô hiez si einen ir trût
Then bade she one her favorite

nemen eine rindes hût,
take a cow's hide,

sine woldez niht vermîden,
she would-it not avoid,

si hiez die hût snîden
she bade the hide cut

zeinem smalen riemen
to-a narrow thong

und nam dô einen priemen
and took then an awl

und hiezen stechen in daz lant.
and bade-it stick into the land.

den riemen si dar ane bant,
the thong she there on bound,

si nam in an dem ende
she took it at the end

selbe mit ir hende,
herself with her hand,

dâ mite sie dô umbe gienk;
there with she then about went;

mit deme riemen sie bevienk
with the thong she encompassed

einen kreiz wîten.
a circle wide.

in den selben zîten
in the same times

stihte frouwe Dîdô
founded lady Dido

veste torne unde hô,
firm towers and high,

eine schône mûre.
a fair wall.

des nam si lutzel tûre,
of-that took she little dearness,

wande si was vil rîche:
for she was very rich:

und warb dô listichlîche,
and strove then cunningly,

unz sie sô verre vore quam,
until she so far forward came,

daz ir wart gehôrsam
that to-her became obedient

Libîâ daz lant al
Libya the land all

uber berch und uber tal.
over hill and over dale.

Ir diende lût unde lant,
To-her served people and land,

daz sie dâ nieman ne vant
that she there no-one — found

der ir getorste widerstân,
who to-her dared withstand,

wan diu borch was sô getân,
for the castle was so made,

daz siz allez mite betwank.
that she-it all therewith subdued.

ez wâre ze sagenne alze lank
it were to tell all-too long

umbe die borch mâre,
about the castle famous,

wie si gebûwet wâre.
how it built were.

des Virgilîûs der helt
of-what Virgil the hero

in sînen bûchen dar von zelt,
in his books there of tells,

des scholen wir vil lâzen
of-that shall we much leave

unde nâch der mâzen
and after the measure

die rede harde korten.
the tale very shorten.

si hete siben porten,
it had seven gates,

bî der iegelîcher
by of-which each

saz ein grêve rîcher,
sat a count rich,

ob ez nôt wâre,
if it need were,

der die borch mâre
who the castle famous

mit drin hundert rittern solde weren,
with three hundred knights should defend,

ob si ieman wolde heren.
if it anyone would harry.

dar abe heten sie lêhen.
there from had they fiefs.

die frouwen mûsten si alle flêhen
the lady must they all beseech

die rîchen hûsgenôzen.
the rich house-fellows.

an Kartâginê der grôzen
at Carthage the great

stunden torne hundert.
stood towers a-hundred.

swen sô des wundert,
whom so of-that wonders,

wil her ez versûchen,
(if)-will he it test,

her kome zû den bûchen
he come to the books

diu dâ heizent Êneide.
which there are-called Eneid.

nâch der wârheide,
after the truth,

als ez dar ane gescriben is,
as it there on written is,

sô mach hers wol sîn gewis.
so may he-of-it well be certain.

The Envoys Before Dido

III

Carthage stands rich between the sea and the rivers, with Dido's towers and palace and a minster to Juno, whom Dido honors so that the city may rule the world, which Rome later did. The envoys find Dido, and Ylionix tells of Troy's fall, the seven years at sea, the lost ship, and the broken fleet. Dido, herself an exile from Tyre, offers Aeneas land, treasure, and her own palace. The envoys return to find the scattered ships safe, and in a quick exchange they tell Aeneas of the welcome.

Kartâgô was rîche
Carthage was rich

und stunt gelegenlîche
and stood conveniently

aller slahte gûte.
of-all kind of-goods.

des ieman was ze mûte,
of-what anyone was in mind,

daz iender wesen solde,
that anywhere be should,

der ez dâ sûchen wolde,
who it there seek would,

daz funden solde werden
that found should be

in wazzer joch in erden,
in water or in earth,

des vant man alles dâ genûch,
of-that found one all there enough,

daz wazzer unde lant trûch.
that water and land bore.

daz mer gienk einer sîte
the sea went on-one side

daz tiefe unt daz wîte
the deep and the wide

und anderhalb die flûmen
and on-the-other-side the rivers

grôzen unde rûmen:
great and broad:

da enmitten stunt diu borch sô vast,
there in-the-midst stood the castle so firm,

daz si niene vorhte ein bast
that it not-at-all feared a bast

allez erdische here.
all earthly host.

an einem ende ûf dem mere
at one end upon the sea

hete frouwe Dîdô
had lady Dido

torne veste unde hô,
towers firm and high,

dâ ir wonunge was.
where her dwelling was.

dâ stunt ein rîche palas
there stood a rich palace

und schône kemenâten
and fair chambers

hêrlîche berâten.
lordly furnished.

Michel was ir wîstûm.
Great was her wisdom.

si hete grôzen rîchtûm:
she had great riches:

des vorhte man si sêre.
for-that feared one her sorely.

in vrowen Jûnônen êre
in lady Juno's honor

stunt ein munster dâ
stood a minster there

bî ir hûse gnûch nâ,
by her house enough near,

daz machte frouwe Dîdô.
that made lady Dido.

dâ wart diu gotinne Jûnô
there was the goddess Juno

vil harde inne gêret.
very greatly therein honored.

Dîdô hete gekêret
Dido had turned

ir flîz wole dar zû
her zeal well there to

beidiu spâte unde frû.
both late and early.

daz tete si dorch die scholde,
that did she for the cause,

daz Jûnô schaffen solde,
that Juno bring-about should,

daz Kartâgô diu mâre
that Carthage the famous

houbetstat wâre
capital were

uber alliu diu rîche,
over all the realms,

und daz ir gelîche
and that to-her alike

diu lant wâren undertân.
the lands were subject.

ez enmohte niht sô ergân:
it might not so happen:

sint hete Rôme den gewalt,
later had Rome the power,

daz man ir den cins galt
that one to-her the tribute paid

und man ir in sande
and one to-her it sent

von vil manegem lande.
from very many-a land.

daz was sît uber manich jâr,
that was later over many-a year,

daz weiz gnûch lûte vor wâr.
that know enough people for true.

Dô die boten quâmen dare
When the messengers came thither

und sie der borch worden geware
and they of-the castle became aware

und sie si ane gesâgen,
and they it at looked,

do begonden si frâgen
then began they to-ask

umbe die borch mâre,
about the castle famous,

wer dâ hêre wâre
who there lord were

uber die stat und uber daz lant.
over the town and over the land.

dô sageten in zehant
then told them at-once

die lûte die si dâ funden,
the people whom they there found,

die sis gevrâgen kunden,
whom they-of-it ask could,

ez wâre Kartâgô,
it were Carthage,

dâ diu frouwe Dîdô
where the lady Dido

gewaldich uber wâre.
mighty over were.

dô si dô daz mâre
when they then the tidings

rehte vernâmen,
rightly heard,

mit frâge sie dô quâmen
with asking they then came

vor die frowen, dâ sie dô was
before the lady, where she then was

nâhen bî ir palas
near by her palace

in einer kemenâten.
in a chamber.

si worden des ze râte,
they became of-it to counsel,

daz si dare wolden gân.
that they thither would go.

dô siz heten getân,
when they-it had done,

do enphienk si gûtlîche
then received them kindly

frowe Dîdô diu rîche.
lady Dido the rich.

Dô gnâdeten sie der frouwen
Then thanked they the lady

der minnen und der trouwen,
for-the love and for-the faith,

die si an ir funden.
which they in her found.

so si aller beste kunden,
as they of-all best could,

sô sprâchen sir ze holden
so spoke they-to-her in favor

und sageten daz si wolden
and said that they would

helfe rât unde frede.
help counsel and peace.

Ylîonix sprach die rede,
Ylionix spoke the speech,

dar umbe si ûz wâren komen.
there about they out were come.

‚frowe, ir habet wol vernomen,
‚lady, you have well heard,

sô ich rehte wâne,
as I rightly ween,

irn sît des niht âne,
you are of-it not without,

irn habet daz wort gehôret,
unless-you have the word heard,

wie Troie wart zestôret
how Troy was destroyed

unde wie daz irgienk,
and how that happened,

daz man lûte dâ vienk,
that one people there seized,

daz dâ lutzel iemen genas,
that there little anyone survived,

und wie mîn hêre Ênêas
and how my lord Aeneas

mit ein luzel lûte danne fûr,
with a little people thence fared,

daz ime is worden vile sûr
that to-him is become very bitter

und die mit im wâren
and those-who with him were

in disen siben jâren.
in these seven years.

die gote heten in gesant
the gods had him sent

zû Italjen in daz lant.
to Italy into the land.

sine mohten im aber niht gefromen,
they might to-him but not avail,

daz er dar in mohte komen.
that he there into might come.

daz lant is uns geverret:
the land is to-us kept-far:

uns hât harde gerret
us has greatly harmed

unsanfte tormint;
ungentle tempest;

uns hât weter unde wint
us has weather and wind

misselîchen getriben;
variously driven;

uns is daz leben kûme bliben
to-us is the life hardly remained

vor des meres unden.
before the sea's waves.

wir sâgen zeinen stunden
we saw at-one hour

daz unser schiffe einez versank
that of-our ships one sank

und daz volc allez ertrank.
and the folk all drowned.

des wâren wir alle vil unfrô.
of-that were we all very unglad.

sich hât diu frouwe Jûnô
herself has the lady Juno

harde an uns gerochen.
greatly on us avenged.

unser schif sint uns zebrochen,
our ships are to-us broken,

di borde und die negele,
the gunwales and the nails,

und gerizzen unser segele;
and torn our sails;

zebrochen sint die maste
broken are the masts

unde diu rûder vaste,
and the oars fast,

die lînen und diu ankerseil.
the lines and the anchor-ropes.

unser schiffe is noch ein teil
of-our ships is yet a part

kûme an daz lant komen,
hardly to the land come,

unde habent habe genomen
and have haven taken

hie bî an ûwer lant.
here by on your land.

mîn hêre hât uns her gesant,
my lord has us hither sent,

daz ir im wellet gnâdich wesen
that you to-him will gracious be

und in hie lât bî û genesen
and him here let by you recover

und weteres irbeiten
and for-weather wait

und sîniu schif bereiten.
and his ships make-ready.

ob ez û gevalle
if it to-you please

her dient û und wir alle,
he serves to-you and we all,

swie sô ir gebietet.
how so you command.

wir hân uns genietet
we have ourselves had-our-fill

grôzer arbeite
of-great hardship

ûf dem mere breite.‘
on the sea broad.‘

Do antworde im frouwe Dîdô,
Then answered to-him lady Dido,

si sprach ‚ich bin des vile frô,
she spoke ‚I am of-it very glad,

daz ir her sît komen.
that you hither are come.

ich hân ez allez wol vernomen
I have it all well heard

umbe Troie, wiez dâ quam,
about Troy, how-it there came,

wie Menelaus den sige nam.
how Menelaus the victory took.

ich weiz es wol die wârheit:
I know of-it well the truth:

ir habet michel arbeit
you have great hardship

irliden nu vil manegen tach,
suffered now very many-a day,

des man gelouben wole mach,
of-that one believe well may,

wande ich weiz wol ein teil
for I know well a part

umb ellende und umb unheil
about exile and about misfortune

und umbe solhe schifvart,
and about such seafaring,

sint daz ich vertriben wart,
since that I driven was,

êr danne mich got hie beriet.
ere than me God here provided.

ichn bin hinnen geboren niet:
I am hence born not:

Tyre daz was mîn lant,
Tyre that was my land,

der ûch dâ here hât gesant,
he-who you there hither has sent,

Ênêas der hêre,
Aeneas the lord,

dem wil ich gût und êre
to-him will I goods and honor

und dienstes tûn alsô vil,
and of-service do as much,

alser selbe nemen wil.
as-he himself take will.

ich wil im bieten âne nôt
I will to-him offer without need

daz ich nie manne erbôt
what I never to-man offered

in der werlde noch nie,
in the world nor ever,

und wolder allez wonen hie
and would-he always dwell here

und liezе sîn umbevaren stân,
and should-let his going-about stand,

des her genûch hât getân.
of-which he enough has done.

nu in got here hât gesant,
now him God hither has sent,

ich teile im lûte unde lant
I share to-him people and land

und allez daz ir hie gesiet.
and all that you here see.

und enwil her des tûn niet,
and (if)-will he of-it do not,

die wîle und er wil hie sîn,
the while and he will here be,

ich und al die frunt mîn
I and all the friends mine

unde borch unde lant
and castle and land

unde schaz unde gewant
and treasure and clothing

daz stêt ze sîneme gebote.
that stands at his command.

ich wil es danken deme gote
I will of-it thank the god

der in dâ her sande.
who him there hither sent.

her sal in diseme lande
he shall in this land

alles des haben genûch,
of-all that have enough,

des disiu erde ie getrûch
which this earth ever bore

her und sîne holden,
he and his liegemen,

ob si ez haben wolden,
if they it have would,

die wîle unz ich sal haben daz leben.
the while until I shall have the life.

ich woldes in genûch geben
I would-of-it to-them enough give

mit lîhteme gedinge
with light bargain

âne phenninge
without pennies

jungen unde alden.
young and old.

ich wil in wol behalden
I will him well keep

in mîner kemenâten.
in my chamber.

ich wil in wol berâten
I will him well provide

gelîch mîn selber lîbe.
like my own body.

nien wart von einem wîbe
never was by a woman

baz enphangen ein man,
better received a man,

ob ich mach und ob ich kan.‘
if I may and if I can.‘

Die boten wâren vile frô,
The messengers were very glad,

dô in diu frouwe Dîdô
when to-them the lady Dido

alsô gûte rede bôt,
so good speech offered,

wan des was in doch nôt.
for of-that was to-them yet need.

mit der frouwen urlove
with the lady's leave

fûren sie ûz deme hove
fared they out-of the court

unde kêrden hin nider
and turned thither down

zir hêren Ênêase wider
to-their lord Aeneas back

aldâ sie in funden.
where they him found.

in den selben stunden
in the same hours

wâren diu schif zesamene komen,
were the ships together come,

diu in der wint hete genomen,
which from-them the wind had taken,

diu si wânden hân verloren
which they weened have lost

in deme storme dâ bevoren.
in the storm there before.

diu stunden al ensament dâ
they stood all together there

bî einander gnûch nâ,
by one-another enough near,

sunder daz dâ was versunken,
except that there was sunk,

dâ die lûte inne irtrunken,
where the people therein drowned,

des si sint iemer mêre enbâren.
of-which they since ever more did-without.

diu ander in komen wâren,
the others to-them come were,

des wâren si alle vile frô.
of-that were they all very glad.

Ênêas was vile hô
Aeneas was very high

ûf einen berch gegangen,
up a hill gone,

dô in begunde belangen
when him began to-long

nâch den, die her hete gesant
after those, whom he had sent

dorch versûchen in daz lant
for searching into the land

umbe solhiu mâre,
about such tidings,

als im lieb wâre
as to-him dear were

unde er gerne hete vernomen.
and he gladly had heard.

do gesach her die boten komen.
then saw he the messengers come.

Ingegene in her dô gienk,
Toward them he then went,

minnechlîche er sie enphienk
lovingly he them received

mit frôlîcheme mûte,
with joyful spirit,

dô ime die boten gûte
when to-him the messengers good

nâhen begunden.
to-near began.

her sprach ‚waz habet ir funden?‘
he spoke ‚what have you found?‘

»allez gût.« ‚unde waz?‘
»all good.« ‚and what?‘

»Kartâgô.« ‚waz is daz?‘ 610
»Carthage.« ‚what is that?‘

»ez is ein borch hêre.«
»it is a castle lordly.«

‚dorch got, saget mêre,
‚for God, say more,

is si verre?‘ »nein, s’is nâ.«
is it far?‘ »no, it-is near.«

‚fundet ir den kunich dâ?‘
‚found you the king there?‘

»da nis kuneges niht.« ‚wie denne sô?‘ 615
»there is of-king naught.« ‚how then so:‘

»dâ is diu frouwe Dîdô.«
»there is the lady Dido.«

‚gesprâchet ir si?‘ »jâ wir tâten.«
‚spoke you her?‘ »yea we did.«

‚wie fundet ir si?‘ »wol berâten.«
‚how found you her?‘ »well provided.«

‚waz enbûtet sie uns?‘ »allez gût.«
‚what sent she us?‘ »all good.«

‚meinet sie ez?‘ »jâ si tût, 620
‚means she it?‘ »yea she does,

sie enphienk uns mit minnen
she received us with love

und wil ûch des brengen innen,
and will you of-it bring aware,

daz ir ir willekomen sît
that you to-her welcome are

zû alsô langer zît,
for as long time,

sô ir mit ir wellet sîn.
as you with her will be.

sie wil û daz lâzen schîn,
she will to-you that let seen,

daz si ûch vil gerne siht.
that she you very gladly sees.

û enmach hie gewerren niht
to-you may here trouble naught

noch nihtes gebrechen
nor of-anything lack

des ieman mach gesprechen.
of-what anyone may speak.

des ir wellet oder geret,
of-what you will or desire,

ir werdet es alles geweret.
you are of-it all granted.

welt ir zû ir kêren.
(if)-will you to her turn.

sie wil û mit êren,
she will to-you with honor,

ob ir mit gnâden wellet leben,
if you with grace will live,

und âne kouf genûch geben.
and without price enough give.

lâzet sis gewalden,
let her-it rule,

si wil ûch wol behalden
she will you well keep

in ir selber palas.«
in her own palace.«

des frowete sich Ênêas.
of-that rejoiced himself Aeneas.

Aeneas at Dido's Court

IV

Aeneas takes counsel, then rides to Carthage with five hundred chosen knights in rich clothing. Dido receives him lovingly, and Venus and Cupid bring about that she loves him beyond measure, which costs her life. Aeneas sends for Ascanius and for gifts for Dido, Hecuba's dalmatic among them. Venus touches the boy's mouth with her fire, and Dido, kissing him, is kindled. Venus's arrow and Cupid's torch torment her in secret, and after the feast she asks Aeneas to tell how Troy was won.

Dô her die boteschaft vernam,
When he the message heard,

zû sînem volke er wider quam
to his folk he back came

frôlîch und offenbâre
joyfully and openly

und sagete in daz mâre,
and told them the tidings,

daz er hete vernomen,
that he had heard,

wie sîne boten wâren komen.
how his messengers were come.

zû zin nam er dô rât
to them took he then counsel

umbe sô getâne tât,
about so made deed,

waz si des râten wolden,
what they of-it counsel would,

ob si dar varen solden.
whether they thither fare should.

dô worden si des alle vrô,
then became they of-it all glad,

daz in diu frouwe Dîdô
that to-them the lady Dido

die rede ie wolde enbieten.
the speech ever would send-word.

vil vaste si im rieten
very firmly they to-him counseled

beide junge und' alde,
both young and old,

daz her dar fûre balde.
that he thither should-fare quickly.

Dô wart her des ze râte,
Then became he of-it to counsel,

daz er alsô tâte,
that he so should-do,

wande siz alle rieten.
for they-it all counseled.

dô hiez her gebieten
then bade he command

den rîtâren, die her wolde,
the knights, whom he would,

die her mit im fûren solde.
whom he with him take should.

niht si dô ne beiten,
not they then — waited,

vil wol si sich gereiten
very well they themselves readied

mit hêrlîchem gewande,
with lordly clothing,

des si von ir lande
of-which they from their land

gnûch dare brahten,
enough thither brought,

zierheit maneger slahte
adornment of-many kind

und manege grôze rîcheit.
and many-a great richness.

dô si alle wâren gereit
when they all were ready

sô ez hêren wol gezam,
as it to-lords well befitted,

Ênêas zû ime nam
Aeneas to him took

ritter funf hundert,
knights five hundred,

die hete her gesundert
whom had he set-apart

unde erkoren ûz dem here
and chosen out-of the host

daz er braht het uber mere,
that he brought had over sea,

die wâren ime alle gereit.
they were to-him all ready.

an den het her die fromecheit
in them had he the worth

vil ofte erfunden,
very often found,

daz si vil wol kunden
that they very well could

sprechen unde gebâren
speak and bear-themselves

und edele lûte wâren
and noble people were

und sumelîche sô wol getân,
and some so well made,

ob si vor den keiser solden gân
if they before the emperor should go

daz si im wol gezâmen.
that they to-him well befitted.

man saget uns, daz si nâmen
one tells us, that they took

manich gût kastelân
many-a good Castilian

snel unde wol getân
swift and well made

und manich schône râvît.
and many-a fair palfrey.

dô ez den hêren dûhte zît
when it to-the lord seemed time

daz er zû der borch rite,
that he to the castle should-ride,

dô was er nâch sîme site
then was he after his custom

gekleidet hêrlîche.
clad lordly.

Ênêas der rîche
Aeneas the rich

der was ein schône man,
he was a fair man,

deich û niht vollen sagen kan,
that-I to-you not fully tell can,

wie rehte minnechlîche er was.
how rightly lovely he was.

dô reit der hêre Ênêas
then rode the lord Aeneas

mit den sînen mannen
with the his men

hêrlîche dannen
lordly thence

mit einer schônen schare.
with a fair troop.

dô hiez er mit den schiffen varen
then bade he with the ships fare

hin zû der mûren,
thither to the wall,

dar si doch gerne fûren.
where they yet gladly fared.

Dô her zû der borch quam,
When he to the castle came,

dô dûhte si in vil lussam
then seemed it to-him very lovely

ûzen unde innen.
outside and inside.

sine mohte niht gewinnen
it might not win

dehein here mit gewalt.
any host with force.

dô der mâre, helt balt
when the famous, hero bold

mit sînem volke dar în reit,
with his folk there in rode,

die strâze vander vile breit
the street found-he very broad

und sach beidenthalben stân
and saw on-both-sides stand

manich hûs wol getân
many-a house well made

und manich rîche palas,
and many-a rich palace,

daz von marmore was,
which of marble was,

dâ her vor solde rîten,
where he before should ride,

und gesach en beiden sîten
and saw on both sides

magede unde frouwen,
maidens and ladies,

die in wolden schouwen,
who him would behold,

gezieret unde gebunden,
adorned and bound,

so si allerbeste kunden,
as they of-all-best could,

die in gerne sâgen.
who him gladly saw.

sine dorften niht frâgen,
they needed not ask,

welich der hêre wâre:
which the lord were:

Ênêas der mâre
Aeneas the famous

was sô schône dâ bevoren,
was so fair there before-others,

daz er lîhte was erkoren.
that he easily was chosen.

Dô quam der hêre Ênêas
Then came the lord Aeneas

dâ frouwe Dîdô was,
where lady Dido was,

diu mâre und diu rîche.
the famous and the rich.

si enphieng in minnechlîche
she received him lovingly

und dar zû alle sîne man.
and there to all his men.

dô sin kussen began,
when she-him to-kiss began,

sie schûf im sînen gemach,
she made for-him his ease,

daz ime nihtes gebrach
that to-him of-naught lacked

und allen sînen holden:
and to-all his liegemen:

man tet dâ daz si wolden.
one did there what they would.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

in die borch komen was
into the castle come was

frowen Dîdônen ze hûs,
to-lady Dido at home,

do geschûf sîn mûder Vênûs
then brought-about his mother Venus

und sîn brûder Cupidô,
and his brother Cupid,

daz in diu frouwe Dîdô
that him the lady Dido

starke minnen began,
strongly to-love began,

daz nie wîb einen man
that never woman a man

harder mohte geminnen.
harder might love.

des brahte sie in innen,
of-that brought she him aware,

daz sis ubele genôz.
that she-of-it badly enjoyed.

ir minne diu was ze grôz,
her love it was too great,

wand si drumbe mûste geben
for she therefore must give

ze aller jungest ir leben
at-the very last her life

und jâmerlîche ir ende nam.
and wretchedly her end took.

nu hôret, wie ez dar zû quam.
now hear, how it there to came.

Dô ez alsô ergienk,
When it so happened,

daz Ênêam enphienk
that Aeneas received

frowe Dîdô diu rîche
lady Dido the rich

alsô gûtlîche
so kindly

und alle die von deme lande,
and all those from the land,

sîne boten her dô sande
his messengers he then sent

von der borch hin nidere
from the castle thither down

zû den schiffen widere
to the ships back

nâch Ascânjô sîme sun.
after Ascanius his son.

dannoch hiez er mêre tûn
moreover bade he more do

Ênêas der mâre:
Aeneas the famous:

sînen kamerâre
his chamberlain

hiez er schiere brengen
bade he quickly bring

(ern woldez niht lengen)
(he would-it not delay)

einen koph von golde,
a cup of gold,

den ein sîn holde
which a his liegeman

hete in grôzer hûte,
had in great keeping,

und einen mantel gûten
and a mantle good

harmîn wîz alse ein swane;
of-ermine white as a swan;

der zobel was dar ane
the sable was there on

breit, brûn alse ein bere
broad, brown as a bear

(den het er braht uber mere),
(it had he brought over sea),

lanc zû den fûzen,
long to the feet,

her was geworht mit mûzen.
it was wrought with leisure.

der samît was gût rôt.
the samite was good red.

ez ne was dehein nôt,
it — was no need,

daz ieman des gerûchte,
that anyone of-it cared,

daz er einen bezern sûchte
that he a better should-seek

iender an deheiner stat.
anywhere in any place.

dar zû her ime brengen bat
there to he to-him bring bade

zwêne bouge und ein vingerlîn
two armlets and a ring

und ein nusken guldîn,
and a brooch golden,

meisterlich gewieret
masterfully jeweled

mit golde wol gezieret
with gold well adorned

und einer rîchen frowen gewant,
and a rich lady's garment,

sô nie in daz lant
as never into the land

dehein bezerez quam.
any better came.

ez was vile lobesam:
it was very praiseworthy:

ein pheller dalmaticâ,
a silk dalmatic,

in hete diu kunegin Êcubâ
it had the queen Hecuba

ane, sô si die krône trûch.
on, when she the crown bore.

her was lobelich genûch,
it was praiseworthy enough,

hern mohte niht bezer sîn.
it might not better be.

Ênêas liez wole schîn
Aeneas let well seen

wes her dâ mite gedahte.
of-what he there with thought.

dô man ez ime brahte,
when one it to-him brought,

dô sand erz frouwen Dîdôn.
then sent he-it to-lady Dido.

diu gab ime den widerlôn
she gave to-him the return-gift

sô harde ûz der mâzen,
so very out-of the measure,

der bezer wâre verlâzen.
which better were let-be.

Zû den selben zîten,
At the same times,

do ze hove wolde rîten
when to court would ride

der jungelink Ascânjûs,
the youngling Ascanius,

dô rûrdin frouwe Vênûs
then touched-him lady Venus

mit ir fûre an sînen munt
with her fire on his mouth

sâ zû der selber stunt
at-once at the same hour

ê her zûze hove rite
ere he to court should-ride

unde gab im dâ mite
and gave to-him there with

solhe kraft von minnen dâ,
such power of love there,

swer sô in kuste dar nâ
whoever so him kissed there after
zû dem êrsten mâle,
at the first time,
daz der von minnen quâle
that he with love's torment
verholne und offenbâre
secretly and openly
dâ intfenget wâre
there kindled were
mit der minnen fûre.
with the love's fire.
daz koufte vile tûre
that bought very dearly
Dîdô, diuz dar abe nam,
Dido, who-it there from took,
dô daz kint ze hove quam.
when the child to court came.
Vernemet seltsâniu dink.
Hear strange things.
do Ascânjûs der jungelink
when Ascanius the youngling
zû der frouwen bequam,
to the lady came,
dô was her vile lussam.
then was he very lovely.
gezogenlîche er zû ir gienk,
courteously he to her went,
mit den armen her si umbevienk,
with the arms he her embraced,
si kuste in an sînen munt:
she kissed him on his mouth:

des wart si zû der stunt
by-that was she at the hour

vaste bestricket.
fast ensnared.

in ir wart erquicket
in her was quickened

der minnen fûr vile heiz,
the love's fire very hot,

dâ luzel ieman umbe weiz,
of-which little anyone about knows,

den ez nie gebrande.
whom it never burned.

die starken minne sande
the strong love sent

diu gotinne Vênûs
the goddess Venus

frouwen Dîdôn ze hûs,
to-lady Dido at home,

dâ si ir selber umbe vergaz.
where she her self about forgot.

Ênêas bî ir saz
Aeneas by her sat

do si also brinnen began.
when she so to-burn began.

her was ein vil schône man
he was a very fair man

unde minnechlîche getân,
and lovely made,

done mohte si des niht engân,
then might she of-it not escape,

si enmûste in starke minnen.
unless-she must him strongly love.

êr hers worde innen
ere he-of-it should-become aware

des dûhte die frowen vil lanc,
that seemed to-the lady very long,

wan sie diu minne sêre dwanc.
for her the love sorely constrained.

Do enweste niht Ênêas,
Then knew not Aeneas,

daz im frouwe Dîdô was
that to-him lady Dido was

sô unmâzlîchen holt,
so immeasurably devoted,

wande si grôze undolt
for she great impatience

in ir herzen verhal,
in her heart concealed,

daz sie von minnen alsô qual.
that she with love so suffered.

sine getorste niht beginnen,
she dared not begin,

daz si ime der minnen
that she to-him of-the love

zêrist zû gewûge.
first to should-speak.

swie si sie vertrûge,
however she it endured,

es nam si grôze hâle,
of-it took she great concealment,

sint ir Vênûs die strâle
since to-her Venus the arrow

in daz herze geschôz.
into the heart shot.

sie leit ungemach grôz,
she suffered discomfort great,

diu mâre frouwe Dîdô.
the famous lady Dido.

dô quam der hêre Cupidô
then came the lord Cupid

mit sîner vakelen dar zû
with his torch there to

und habet ir spâte unde frû
and held to-her late and early

daz fûre an die wunden.
the fire to the wounds.

si wart in korzen stunden
she became in short hours

vil mislîchen gevar.
very variously colored.

daz gesâgen die des nâmen war.
that saw those-who of-it took heed.

si leit vil michile nôt.
she suffered very great distress.

in korzer stunde wart si rôt,
in short hour became she red,

dar nâch schiere varlôs:
there after quickly colorless:

ir was heiz und si frôs.
to-her was hot and she froze.

Si was von minnen alsô wunt:
She was by love so wounded:

daz ir ê was wole kunt,
what to-her before was well known,

daz mûste mans dô lêren.
that must one-her then teach.

sine weste sich war kêren,
she-not knew herself whither to-turn,

sie leit michel arbeit.
she suffered great hardship.

dô daz ezzen was gereit
when the meal was ready

und si uber tisch quam,
and she to table came,

dô diende man als es wol gezam
then served one as it well befitted

ir unde ir gesten,
her and her guests,

den lîhten und den besten,
the lesser and the best,

man gab in gnûch uber al
one gave to-them enough over all

in der kemnâten und in dem sal
in the chamber and in the hall

vil gezogenlîche.
very courteously.

frowe Dîdô diu rîche
lady Dido the rich

hete es wol gerâten
had it well ordered

mit den die ez tâten,
with those who it did,

wand ir der hêre Ênêas
for to-her the lord Aeneas

ein vil lieber gast was
a very dear guest was

und alle sîne gesellen.
and all his comrades.

man enmohte niht gezellen
one might not count

diu rihte noch daz trinken.
the dishes nor the drink.

des ieman mohte irdenken
of-what anyone might devise

des heten si alle genûch.
of-that had they all enough.

gefûchlîch manz vore trûch.
fittingly one-it before bore.

Dô daz ezzen was getân,
When the eating was done,

dô was dâ manich Troiân
then was there many-a Trojan

wol gemût unde frô.
well spirited and glad.

nu was die frouwe Dîdô
now was the lady Dido

und der hêre Ênêas
and the lord Aeneas

aldâ in lieb was
there to-them dear was

ensament gesezen an ein stat.
together seated in a place.

minnechlîche sie in bat,
lovingly she him asked,

daz her sich bedehte
that he himself should-bethink

unde ir sagete rehte,
and to-her should-tell rightly,

wie Troie wart gewunnen:
how Troy was won:

her sprach ‚ir habet begunnen
he spoke ‚you have begun

einer rede, diu mir wê tût.
a speech, which to-me woe does.

sint ez ûch aber dunket gût,
since it to-you but seems good,

ich bin sîn, frouwe, vil gereit,
I am of-it, lady, very ready,

daz ich û sage die wârheit,
that I to-you tell the truth,

wande ich si wol gesagen kan,
for I it well tell can,

sô daz ûch des nieman
so that to-you of-it no-one

baz berihten enmach,
better inform may,

wande ichz hôrde unde sach.
for I-it heard and saw.

Aeneas Tells of the Fall of Troy

V

Aeneas tells how the Greeks besieged Troy for ten years and then, on Ulysses's counsel, built a great wooden horse holding five thousand knights and sailed off to hide. A Greek found bound, Sinon, who was Ulysses in disguise, lied that he had escaped being sacrificed and that the horse was an atonement to Pallas for her broken image, too great for the gates. The Trojans broke their wall and drew it in. While they slept the knights came out, the fleet returned, and Troy burned, and Aeneas, as the gods bade him, fled.

Ich bin es alles vil gewis,
I am of-it all very certain,

dô Alexander Pâris
when Alexander Paris

Menelâô sîn wîb nam,
from-Menelaus his woman took,

dâ michel ubel abe quam,
whence great evil from came,

des maneger ubele genôz,
of-which many-a-one badly enjoyed,

Troie diu was vile grôz,
Troy it was very great,

[drîer tageweide lank
[*three days'-journeys long*

al bî des meres gank,
all by the sea's course,

und] einer tageweide wît.
and] one day's-journey wide.

wir wâren dô zû der zît
we were then at the time

vil harde vermezzen.
very greatly bold.

dô wir worden besezzen,
when we became besieged,

wir heten manegen fromen man,
we had many-a valiant man,

sô ir nie kunich mê gewan,
as of-them never king more won,

in einer borch alsô vil,
in one castle so many,

daz mach glouben swer sô wil,
that may believe whoever so will,

ez is diu rehte wârheit.
it is the right truth.

die Criechen funden uns gereit
the Greeks found us ready

ze storme und ze strîte
for assault and for battle

ze aller slahte zîte,
at all kind of-time,

ze rosse und ze fûzze.
on horse and on foot.

wir heten gûte mûzze,
we had good leisure,

wande wir wâren zehen jâr
for we were ten years

alsô besezȥen, daȥ is wâr.
so besieged, that is true.

werhaft sie uns funden,
defensible they us found,

wir hâten under stunden
we had at times

mêr denne ein jâr frede
more than a year peace

ûf bescheidene rede,
on agreed terms,

daȥ wir zû zin giengen
that we to them went

unde si uns enphiengen
and they us received

und si zû uns quâmen
and they to us came

und unsen kouf nâmen
and our wares took

und alsô fûren her unt dar.
and so fared hither and thither.

dô sie des worden gewar
when they of-it became aware

daȥ si uns mit deheinen sinnen
that they us with no wits

niht mohten gewinnen
not might win

und dicke schaden heten genomen,
and often harm had taken,

dô wârn si des enein komen,
then were they of-it agreed come,

daz si uns begeben wolden
that they us give-up would

und dannen varen solden.
and thence fare should.

Dô si ze râte worden des,
When they to counsel became of-this,

dô erretes Ulixes,
then devised-it Ulysses,

dem wir iemer mogen flûchen.
whom we ever may curse.

her sprach, her wolde versûchen
he spoke, he would try

ein list, des her hete gedaht.
a trick, which he had thought.

dô hiez er tach unde naht
then bade he day and night

ein ros von holze machen grôz.
a horse of wood make great.

der arbeit in niht verdrôz.
the toil him not irked.

ez was wît unde hô
it was wide and high

und was gemachet alsô,
and was made so,

sô uns dar abe gesaget is,
as to-us there of told is,

daz wir des soln sîn gewis,
that we of-it shall be certain,

mit funfzich solren sunder
with fifty stories apart

obene unde under
above and below

und mit solhen sinnen,
and with such wits,

daz man tete enbinnen
that one put within

ritter funfzich hundert
knights fifty hundred

von dem here gesundert.
from the host set-apart.

dô ez allez getân wart,
when it all done was,

dô hûben sie sich an die vart
then raised they themselves on the journey

unde fûr bî naht daz here
and fared by night the host

mit den schiffen in daz mere
with the ships into the sea

hin dan in ein lant,
thither away into a land,

dâ man sie sint inne vant,
where one them since in found,

und lâgen dâ verborgen.
and lay there hidden.

als dô quam der morgen
when then came the morning

unde lieht wart der tach
and light became the day

und man daz wunder gesach,
and one the wonder saw,

dô wart daz schiere mâre,
then became that quickly tidings,

daz daz here entrunnen wâre.
that the host escaped were.

Dô manz in der borch vernam,
When one-it in the castle heard,

dô reit der kunich Prîam
then rode the king Priam

dar ûz mit sînen mannen.
there out with his men.

dô was daz here dannen.
then was the host away.

des wâre wir alle vile frô
of-that were we all very glad

daz ez komen was alsô.
that it come was so.

ez quam uns doch unrehte.
it came to-us yet wrongly.

ez quâmen unser knehte
there came our servants

da si einen man funden
where they a man found

nacket unde gebunden,
naked and bound,

der uns alle betrouch
who us all deceived

und uns tûvellîche louch.
and to-us devilishly lied.

niht langer sie ne beiten,
not longer they — waited,

vor den kunech sin leiten.
before the king they-him led.

her quam in der gebâre,
he came in the bearing,

als er siech wâre.
as-if he sick were.

wunderlich was sîn klage,
wondrous was his lament,

alser betalle wâre ein zage,
as-if-he wholly were a coward,

mit den zenen slûch her manegen slach.
with the teeth struck he many-a stroke.

dô in der kunich ane sach,
when him the king at looked,

dô zalder in zeinem armen
then counted-he him as-a poor-man

und begunde in zerbarmen.
and began him to-pity.

her gebôt daz man in enbant
he commanded that one him unbound

und hiez im geben gût gewant.
and bade to-him give good clothing.

dô frâgete man in mâre,
then asked one him tidings,

wâ daz here wâre
where the host were

und war umbe er dâ wâre bliben.
and where fore he there were remained.

dô begunde er weinen unde biben,
then began he to-weep and to-tremble,

Her sprach ‚hêre, ich bin ein Kriech
He spoke ‚lord, I am a Greek

und von angesten siech,
and from fears sick,

des wirt mir unsanfte bûz,
of-that becomes to-me ungently remedy,

wande ich nu sterben mûz.
for I now die must.

vile sicher bin ich des.
very certain am I of-it.

alsô wolde Ulixes,
so would Ulysses,

der mir mînen ôheim slûch.
who to-me my uncle slew.

daz was mir widermût genûch
that was to-me vexation enough

unde leit und ungemach.
and sorrow and discomfort.

dorch daz ich sô vil gesprach:
for that I so much spoke:

quâmez alse ich wolde,
should-come-it as I would,

daz ich in rechen solde,
that I him avenge should,

dar umbe hiez er mich vân
there about bade he me seize

und wolde mich ze tôde erslân.
and would me to death slay.

do ez alsô was ergangen,
when it so was happened,

dô hielt her mich gevangen,
then held he me captive,

unz die Kriechen opher solden tûn
until the Greeks offering should do

(sprach der schalk Synûn)
(spoke the rogue Sinon)

ze lobe allen den goten.
to praise all the gods.

alsô dô daz was geboten,
as then that was commanded,

daz man einen Kriechen solde erslân,
that one a Greek should slay,

(daz solde dorch daz sîn getân,
(that should for that be done,

daz in genâdich wâre
that to-them gracious were

Êolûs der mâre,
Aeolus the famous,

der kunich von den winden,
the king of the winds,

daz her si wolde senden
that he them would send

ze lande wider uber mere):
to land back over sea):

done was under al dem here
then was among all the host

nieman alsô helfelôs,
no-one so helpless,

dô man mich dar ûz erkôs.
when one me there out chose.

daz tet aber Ulixes.
that did but Ulysses.

her was meister des,
he was master of-it,

daz ich dar zû wart erkoren.
that I there to was chosen.

des hete ich nâch den lîb verloren.
of-that had I nearly the life lost.

ich was dar zû gereitet,
I was there to readied,

mich hete dar geleitet
me had thither led

Ulixes und die sîne.
Ulysses and the his-ones.

mit olei und mit wîne
with oil and with wine

was mir daz houbet gewaschen.
was to-me the head washed.

si heten mir mele und aschen
they had to-me meal and ashes

drûf geleget beide.
thereon laid both.

ichn gestunt mir nie sô leide:
I stood to-myself never so sorrowfully:

ich gesach den bî mir stân,
I saw him by me stand,

der mirz houbet solde abe slân.
who to-me-the head should off strike.

daz swert hete her gezogen
the sword had he drawn

und ich was dernider gebogen.
and I was down bent.

den hals hiez er mich endecken,
the neck bade he me uncover,

und ich wolde in strecken:
and I would it stretch:

dô wart zû der selber zît
then became at the same time

underm here ein michel strît.
among-the host a great battle.

dô des der kunich wart gewar,
when of-it the king became aware,

dô fûr er ageleizze dar
then fared he in-haste thither

und die andern alle nâ
and the others all after

und liezen mich eine dâ.
and left me alone there.

bî mir beleib dâ nieman.
by me remained there no-one.

dô ich den rûm dô gewan,
when I the room then won,

ich flôch hinder in dan.
I fled behind them away.

ichn weiz wen si hân erslan,
I-not know whom they have slain,

alsô sie mich solden.
as they me should.

zeim opher sie mich wolden,
for-an offering they me would,

unde hânt wint gewunnen.
and have wind won.

Êolûs hât in gegunnen,
Aeolus has to-them granted,

daz si sint uber sê.
that they are over sea.

des is ein jâr unde mê,
of-that is a year and more,

daz si gerne wâren hinnen.
that they gladly were hence.

sin mohten die borch niht gewinnen,
they might the castle not win,

die wîle daz frou Pallas
the while that lady Pallas

drinne in der borch was
therein in the castle was

alsô harde gêret.
so greatly honored.

nu sint si hinnen kêret,
now are they hence turned,

alse ir wole habet vernomen:
as you well have heard:

irn dorfet rûchen wenne si komen.‘
you-not need care when they come.‘

Der kunich hiez in dô frâgen
The king bade him then ask

umbe daz ros, daz sie dâ sâgen,
about the horse, which they there saw,

waz daz wesen solde
what that be should

und dorch welhe scholde
and for which cause

ez dâ gemachet wâre.
it there made were.

dô sageter uns ein mâre,
then told-he us a tale,

daz betalle was erlogen,
that wholly was lied,

dâ mite worden wir betrogen.
there with were we deceived.

diu luge was im vil gereit.
the lie was to-him very ready.

her sprach ‚ez is diu wârheit,
he spoke ‚it is the truth,

daz diu gotinne Pallas
that the goddess Pallas

hie ûze harde erbelget was
here outside very angered was

umb daz die Kriechen tâten,
about what the Greeks did,

die ubele wâren berâten.
who badly were counseled.

ez quam von unsinne.
it came from madness.

si schûfen, daz dar inne
they brought-about, that there in

ir bilde wart zebrochen.
her image was broken.

daz hât si wol gerochen,
that has she well avenged,

daz man ez dorch tumbheit brach.
that one it through folly broke.

des wart sint leit und ungemach
of-that became since sorrow and discomfort

den blôden und den kûnen.
to-the timid and to-the bold.

dô wolden siz versûnen
then would they-it atone

mit sûnlîchen sachen.
with atoning things.

daz ros hiezens machen
the horse bade-they make

alsô grôz und alsô hô,
so great and so high,

und was gemachet alsô,
and was made so,

daz man daz wolde,
that one that would,

daz si dar ûf solde
that she there upon should

gewâfent sîn gesetzet.
armed be set.

dô wart daz geletzet
then was that hindered

dorch ein schînbâre nôt:
through an evident need:

der werkmeister der is tôt,
the master-workman he is dead,

der ez machen began.
who it to-make began.

nu enis dehein man
now is no man

der selben liste sîn genôz.
of-the same skill his equal.

dar umbe macheten siz sô grôz,
there about made they-it so great,

daz irz mit deheinen dingen
that you-it with no things

in die borch moget bringen.
into the castle may bring.

Ich wil ez sagen mit sinne:
I will it say with sense:

dâ is hêrtûmes inne
there is of-holy-things in-it

sô unmâzlîchen vil,
so immeasurably much,

daz man daz gelouben wil,
that one that believe will,

in swelher borch sô ez blibe,
in whichever castle so it should-remain,

daz michel êre dâ beclibe
that great honor there should-cleave

von sige unde von sâlden,
from victory and from fortune,

moht ez werden ganz behalden.‘
might it be whole kept.‘

dâ mite verriet uns der warch,
there with betrayed us the wretch,

her was listich unde karch,
he was cunning and crafty,

daz wir wânden wole tûn.
that we weened well to-do.

her nande sich Sînûn:
he named himself Sinon:

ez was idoch Ulixes.
it was yet Ulysses.

grôzen schaden nâme wir des,
great harm took we of-it,

daz wir sînen willen tâten:
that we his will did:

des worden wir verrâten.
by-that were we betrayed.

Wir wâren alwâre
We were simple

und wânden, daz ez wâre
and weened, that it were

allez wâr daz her gesprach,
all true what he spoke,

dâ uns leit und ungemach
whence to-us sorrow and discomfort

und michel schade abe quam.
and great harm from came.

sîn rede dûhte uns lussam.
his speech seemed to-us lovely.

wir markten sie ze gûte
we took it for good

und wart uns des ze mûte,
and became to-us of-it in mind,

dô wir uns besprâchen,
when we ourselves conferred,

daz wir unser mûren brâchen
that we our wall broke

funfzich klâfteren nider,
fifty fathoms down,

dane sprach dô nieman niht wider.
there spoke then no-one aught against.

daz ros zogen wir dar in.
the horse drew we there in.

daz was ein michel unsin
that was a great folly

unde grôz unmâze.
and great excess.

wir rûmden eine strâze
we cleared a road

funfzich klâfteren breit.
fifty fathoms broad.

wir tâten grôze tumbheit.
we did great folly.

ez gienk ûffe schîben:
it went upon rollers:

dô hiezen wir ez trîben
then bade we it drive

vor unsers munsters tor,
before our minster's gate,

ûf einen hof dar vor
onto a court there before

wîten unde langen.
wide and long.

dâ wart ez wol enphangen
there was it well received

mit lobe unde mit sange,
with praise and with song,

in grôzeme gedrange,
in great throng,

mit tambûrn und mit seitspile.
with tambours and with string-play.

dâ was der wunnen vile.
there was of-the bliss much.

wir wâren alle in hogen,
we were all in mirth,

daz wir iemer clagen mogen.
what we ever lament may.

Diu wunne was dâ vile grôz
The bliss was there very great

unzes die lûte dâ verdrôz
until-it the people there irked

und si begunden swâren,
and they began to-grow-heavy,

wande si mûde wâren,
for they weary were,

daz si der slâf dannen treib
that them the sleep thence drove

und daz ros eine bleib.
and the horse alone remained.

dô daz die gesâgen,
when that those saw,

die in dem rosse lâgen,
who in the horse lay,

daz si die stade gewunnen,
that they the occasion won,

daz ros sie engunnen
the horse they unlocked

an dem bûche und an der sîte.
on the belly and on the side.

sie macheten tore wîte,
they made gates wide,

dar ûz si balde giengen.
there out they quickly went.

die borch si al beviengen,
the castle they all took,

ir willen sie dô tâten.
their will they then did.

si wâren wol berâten,
they were well provided,

si heten dâ ze stunt
they had there at once

ritter funfzich tûsunt,
knights fifty thousand,

daz was ein michel here.
that was a great host.

dô wart âne were
then was without defense

diu meiste borch gewunnen.
the greatest castle won.

hetes uns got gegunnen,
had-it to-us God granted,

ezn mohte niht alsô wesen,
it might not so be,

ob wir solden sîn genesen.
if we should be saved.

si brâchen die borch und branden,
they broke the castle and burned,

daz fûr si ûz sanden.
the fire they out sent.

dô daz jene gesâgen,
when that those saw,

die in den schiffen lâgen,
who in the ships lay,

die danne wâren gevaren
who thence were fared

mit den grôzen scharen,
with the great troops,

unde sis worden gewar,
and they-it became aware,

dô kêrden si alle dar,
then turned they all thither,

daz mâre mahtige here.
the famous mighty host.

dô ne dorfte unser were
then — needed our defense

niender werden begunnen:
nowhere be begun:

sus wart diu borch gewunnen.
thus was the castle won.

Dô ez alsô komen was,
When it so come was,

daz nieman genas,
that no-one survived,

die sich dâ wolden weren,
who themselves there would defend,

dô wolde ich mînen lîb neren,
then would I my life save,

wande ez was mir geboten
for it was to-me commanded

von mînen mâgen den goten.
by my kinsmen the gods.

dô ich weste unde gesach,
when I knew and saw,

daz diu borch der nider lach
that the castle there down lay

unde ich niene mohte genesen,
and I not-at-all might survive,

ob ich dâ wolde sîn gewesen:
if I there would be been:

dô hûb ich mich dannen
then raised I myself thence

mit drin tûsent mannen
with three thousand men

mit vil hêrlîchen scharen
with very lordly troops

und wolde zû Italjen varen
and would to Italy fare

uber daz mere breite.
over the sea broad.

nu bin ich mit arbeite
now am I with hardship

alsus her zû û komen,
thus hither to you come,

alse ir wole habet vernomen.‘
as you well have heard.‘

Dido’s Sleepless Night

VI

Dido listens only to keep him talking and is sorry when he goes to bed. She leads him to a richly furnished chamber, has candles and a fire without smoke made, and serves wine to him and his men. In her own bed she cannot sleep; she rises, prays to Cupid and Venus, strokes her eyes with his armlets, and curses the long night and Paris’s theft of Helen. Toward dawn she dreams of Aeneas and embraces her coverlet, and on waking she dresses alone and goes, mourning, to her women’s chamber.

Des wunderde sich frou Dîdô,
At-that wondered herself lady Dido,

daz man Troien alsô
that one Troy so

gewan unde zebrach.
won and broke.

sine rûchte waz her sprach,
she-not cared what he spoke,

wan daz her eht sprâche.
except that he only should-speak.

si forhte daz ir gebrâche
she feared that to-her should-lack

der stade und der wîle.
the occasion and the while.

sine hiezen niht îlen:
she bade-him not hasten:

ir tete vile baz,
to-her did very better,

daz si zî ime saz
that she by to-him sat

unde si wider in sprach,
and she back to-him spoke,

daz was ir mêre gemach
that was to-her more ease

dan si ûf eime bette lâge
than she on a bed should-lie

unde sie sîn niene sâge.
and she him not-at-all should-see.

alsô was sie bedaht:
so was she minded:

mûste si alle die naht
should-have-to she all the night

bî ime sîn gesezzen,
by him be seated,

si hete wol vergezzen
she had well forgotten

alles des in der werlde was.
all that in the world was.

dô der hêre Ênêas
when the lord Aeneas

der rede genûch hete getân
of-the speech enough had done

unde slâfen solde gân
and to-sleep should go

dâ sîn bette was gereit,
where his bed was ready,

daz was der frouwen vile leit,
that was to-the lady very grievous,

wand si ungerne von im schiet.
for she unwillingly from him parted.

alsus saget uns daz liet.
thus tells us the song.

Dô si dô dannen solde gân,
When she then thence should go,

done mohte sie niht ûf stân,
then might she not up stand,

wan daz ir half Ênêas,
except that to-her helped Aeneas,

daz ir vil aneminne was.
which to-her very welcome was.

vil linde dûhte sie sîn hant.
very soft seemed to-her his hand.

dô leite sie den wîgant
then led she the warrior

in eine kemenâten.
into a chamber.

dâ wâren wol berâten
there were well furnished

diu bette senfte unde weich.
the beds soft and yielding.

dâ in sie mit ime streich.
there in she with him went.

si frâgete den kamerâre,
she asked the chamberlain,

ob daz bette senfte wâre.
whether the bed soft were.

si hiez daz senfte machen.
she bade it soft make.

nû was daz deckelachen
now was the coverlet

purper unde marderîn,
purple and of-marten,

ezn dorfte niht bezzer sîn;
it needed not better be;

daz lîlachen cleine
the sheet fine

wîz unde reine,
white and clean,

daz bette senfte unde wît.
the bed soft and wide.

diu zieche was ein samît
the tick was a samite

wol gedûht mit vederen,
well stuffed with feathers,

diu underzieche lederen,
the under-tick of-leather,

vile weich unde vast.
very yielding and firm.

dar ûffe solde der gast
there upon should the guest

rûwen under stunde,
rest at times,

dem sis wole gunde.
to-whom she-it well granted.

dô ze deme mâle
then at the time

ein colter von zendâle
a quilt of sendal

lach underm bette ûf dem strô.
lay under-the bed on the straw.

daz hete frouwe Dîdô
that had lady Dido

allez ensament dar gesant
all together thither sent

daz gûte bettegewant.
the good bedding.

der bolster was phellelîn
the bolster was of-silk

und daz wankusselîn
and the cheek-cushion

ein vil gût samît was.
a very good samite was.

des gnâdete ir Ênêas.
for-that thanked her Aeneas.

Die kerzen hiez er setzen.
The candles bade he set.

si wolde sich dâ letzen
she would herself there delight

mit frouden und mit spile,
with joys and with play,

dâ bran der kerzen alsô vile,
there burned of-the candles so many,

daz man sô liehte gesach,
that one so brightly saw,

alsez wâre mitter tach.
as-it were mid day.

ez was ouch dâ warm genûch.
it was also there warm enough.

durre holz man dare trûch.
dry wood one thither bore.

dâ was fûre âne rouch;
there was fire without smoke;

daz hete sie bedaht ouch.
that had she thought-of also.

diu minne dwanc si sêre,
the love constrained her sorely,

idoch konde si die êre
yet could she the honor

vile wol bedenken.
very well consider.

dem hêren hiez si schenken
to-the lord bade she pour

und allen sînen holden,
and to-all his liegemen,

sô vil sô sis wolden,
as much as they-it would,

wîn unde lûtertrank.
wine and spiced-drink.

her saget ir gnâde unde dank,
he said to-her grace and thanks,

daz si sîn sô wole phlach.
that she of-him so well took-care.

vil dicke sie in ane sach
very often she him at looked

mit fruntlîchen ougen.
with friendly eyes.

die nosken und die bougen,
the brooches and the armlets,

die her ir hete gegeben,
which he to-her had given,

die wâren ir lieb alse ir leben.
they were to-her dear as her life.

Do ez sô verre naht was
When it so far night was

unde der hêre Ênêas
and the lord Aeneas

gerne rûwen wolde
gladly rest would

und si dannen solde
and she thence should

gên mit ir mannen,
go with her men,

dô schiet se ungerne dannen,
then parted she unwillingly thence,

si wâre gerne beliben noch.
she were gladly remained yet.

dannen schiet si iedoch
thence parted she nevertheless

in ir kemenâte.
into her chamber.

dô dûhte ez vile spâte
then seemed it very late

ir juncfrouwen.
to-her maidens.

dô hiez si balde zouwen
then bade she quickly hasten

daz si ze bette quâme
that she to bed should-come

alse ir wol gezâme.
as to-her well befitted.

ir gemaches sie gedahten,
of-her ease they thought,

hêrlîche sie si brahten
lordly they her brought

dâ ir bette was gereit,
where her bed was ready,

mit gûten phellin bespreit,
with good silks spread,

alse ez ir wole gezam.
as it to-her well befitted.

dô si dô dar zû quam
when she then there to came

unde gelegen was dar ane,
and lain was there on,

die frouwen sande si alle dane
the women sent she all thence

wîb unde magedîn,
women and maidens,

die dâ bî ir solden sîn.
who there by her should be.

si wolde belîben eine dâ.
she would remain alone there.

diu minne was ir alze nâ,
the love was to-her all-too near,

diu si ze unsanft ane quam
which her too ungently on came

und ir den slâf gar benam.
and from-her the sleep wholly took.

dô si denkende wart,
when she thinking became,

ir bette dûhte sie vil hart
her bed seemed to-her very hard

und was doch senfte genûch.
and was yet soft enough.

ir was allez widerfûch,
to-her was all unfitting,

daz si gerûrde unde gesach.
what she touched and saw.

do si eine wîle dâ gelach
when she a while there lay

und sich diu mûde mêrde,
and itself the weariness increased,

ir houbet si umbe kêrde
her head she about turned

nider zû den fûzen.
down to the feet.

irn mohte gebûzen
to-her might amend

daz ir werrende was
what to-her troubling was

nieman wan Ênêas,
no-one but Aeneas,

des si niene vergaz.
whom she not-at-all forgot.

si rihte sich ûf unde saz,
she raised herself up and sat,

mislîche si ez ane vienk,
variously she it at began,

von dem bette sie dô gienk
from the bed she then went

nider an die erden.
down onto the earth.

sie sprach ‚waz sal werden
she spoke ‚what shall become

der armen frouwen Dîdôn?‘
of-the poor lady Dido?‘

si bat genâden Cupidôn,
she begged grace of-Cupid,

Ênêases brûder,
Aeneas's brother,

und Vênerem sîne mûder.
and Venus his mother.

Sie bestreich ir ougen
She stroked her eyes

mit den lieben bougen
with the dear armlets

unde kuste ir vingerlîn.
and kissed her ring.

si wolde des gewis sîn,
she would of-it certain be,

daz si niemer mohte genesen.
that she never might recover.

dô si umbe Ênêasen
when she about Aeneas

denken begunde,
to-think began,

dô wolde sie die stunde
then would she the hour

alsô hine bringen
so away bring

mit eteslîchen dingen.
with some things.

daz was al ir ahte.
that was all her thought.

sô si umbe in dahte,
when she about him thought,

sô ir ie wirs was.
then to-her ever worse was.

done weste niht Ênêas,
then knew not Aeneas,

daz si sô mit der minne vaht
that she so with the love fought

und si in aller der naht
and she in all the night

nie sanfte gelach.
never softly lay.

vil dicke rûfts ‚wan wârez tach!‘
very often cried-she ‚oh-that were-it day!‘

vil unsanfte si lebete,
very ungently she lived,

si switzete unde bebete,
she sweated and trembled,

sie leit michel ungemach.
she suffered great discomfort.

zû ir selber sie sprach
to her self she spoke

‚wie lange sal ez sus stân?
‚how long shall it thus stand?

waz hân ich dem tage getân?
what have I to-the day done?

wer hât in geerret,
who has him hindered,

daz her sô lange merret?
that he so long tarries?

ich hân ez dicke gedaht,
I have it often thought,

diz is diu langeste naht
this is the longest night

diu in der werlde ie wart.
that in the world ever was.

ouwê der vart,
alas for-the journey,

daz Pâris Elenam nam
that Paris Helen took

und daz her ie zû ir quam,
and that he ever to her came,

dar umbe Troie wart zebrochen.
there about Troy was broken.

daz wirt an mir gerochen
that is on me avenged

unsanfte unde sêre.
ungently and sorely.

ouwê, war sal mîn êre
alas, whither shall my honor

und mîn rât und mîn sin,
and my counsel and my sense,

daz ich her zû komen bin?
that I hither to come am?

nû bedarf ich wol arme,
now need I well poor-one,

daz sich Vênûs mîn erbarme,
that herself Venus on-me should-pity,

ob ich iemer sal genesen,
if I ever shall recover,

od ich mûz schiere tôt wesen.‘
or I must quickly dead be.‘

Daz genôz sie der minne,
That enjoyed she of-the love,

daz si in manegem sinne
that she in many-a way

ir dink ane vienk.
her thing at began.

diu naht zegleit und zergienk
the night slipped and passed

nâch der vinster hanecrât.
after the dark cockcrow.

rehte an der tagerât
right at the daybreak

dô lach frouwe Dîdô
then lay lady Dido

unde quam alsô,
and came so,

daz ir daz ouge zû quam.
that to-her the eye to came.

ir deckelachen sie nam
her coverlet she took

under ir arme vaste.
under her arm fast.

ir getroumde von ir gaste:
to-her dreamed of her guest:

si dûhte daz ez wâre
to-her seemed that it were

Ênêas der mâre.
Aeneas the famous.

sie dwanc ez an ir munt
she pressed it to her mouth

zû vil maneger stunt.
at very many-a hour.

grôz wunder si machete.
great wonder she made.

dô si dô intwachete,
when she then awoke,

ein wîle hete sie gemach,
a while had she ease,

unze daz sie gesach,
until that she saw,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

dâ bî ir niene was.
there by her not-at-all was.

dô was ir aber vile wê
then was to-her again very woe

noch wirs danne ê.
yet worse than before.

ir ne was niht baz.
to-her — was not better.

an ir bette sie gesaz,
on her bed she sat,

sine weste wie si ûf quam.
she-not knew how she up came.

ir gebende sie dô nam
her headdress she then took

und ir gewant und ire schû
and her clothing and her shoes

und allez dazs an solde tûn
and all that-she on should do

daz tete si allez eine an
that put she all alone on

und gienk trûrende dan,
and went mourning thence,

des sie vil ungewone was.
of-which she very unaccustomed was.

daz geschûf aber Ênêas,
that brought-about but Aeneas,

daz si ir dink sô ane vienk.
that she her thing so at began.

in eine kameren sie gienk,
into a chamber she went,

dâ ir frouwen lâgen.
where her women lay.

dô si si komen sâgen,
when they her come saw,

dô wâren sie in sorgen:
then were they in cares:

ez was doch frû morgen.
it was yet early morning.

Dido Confides in Anna

VII

Dido tells her sister Anna that she is near death from love, though bound by her oath to Sychaeus. Anna answers that the dead man gains nothing by her death. Dido spells out the beloved's name a syllable at a time, and Anna praises the Trojan as sent by the gods. Dido fears both doing and not doing, and Anna counsels that she may look on him kindly without confessing her love, since he may hide his own. Dido answers that if that were true she might recover, and otherwise she must die.

Sie hete micheln ungemach.
She had great discomfort.

geswâslîche sie dô sprach 1450
secretly she then spoke

zû ir swester Annen.
to her sister Anna.

si leite sie dannen
she led her thence

in ir kemenâten wider
into her chamber back

und viel an daz bette nider.
and fell onto the bed down.

si clagete ir ir ummaht, 1455
she lamented to-her her weakness,

daz si in aller der naht
that she in all the night

nehein teil gesliefe.
no part had-slept.

si sûfte vile tiefe
she sighed very deep

und wart vil ubele getân.
and became very ill made.

si sprach ‚mîn êre wil zergân.' 1460
she spoke ‚my honor will perish.'

»frouwe swester Dîdô«
»lady sister Dido«

sprach Annâ, »wie denne sô?
spoke Anna, »how then so?

saget, waz is ûwer nôt.«
say, what is your distress.«

‚swester, ich bin vil nâch tôt.‘
‚sister, I am very nearly dead.‘

»wenne wordet ir siech, ze welher stunt?«
»when became you sick, at which hour?«

‚swester, ich bin al gesunt
‚sister, I am all healthy

unde enmach doch niht genesen.‘
and may yet not recover.‘

»swester, wie mach daz wesen?
»sister, how may that be?

ich wâne, frowe, ez is minne.«
I ween, lady, it is love.«

‚jâ jâ, swester, mit unsinne.‘
‚yea yea, sister, with madness.‘

»war umbe gehabet ir ûch alsô,
»where fore bear you yourself so,

liebe frouwe Dîdô?
dear lady Dido?

war umbe welt ir sus verderben?
where fore will you thus perish?

irn dorft von minne niht sterben,
you need of love not die,

ir moget vile wol genesen,
you may very well recover,

es mach gût rât wesen.
of-it may good counsel be.

ez nis dehein man ûf der erden,
it is no man on the earth,

her ne moge û wol werden,
unless-he — may to-you well become,

her ne sî frô, welt irn minnen.
unless-he — be glad, (if)-will you-him love.

ir solt ûch baz versinnen.« 1480
you shall yourself better bethink.«

Do antworde ir frouwe Dîdô
Then answered to-her lady Dido

‚ez enstât mir niht alsô,
‚it stands to-me not so,

ez is diu wârheit daz.‘
it is the truth that.‘

»ir solt ûch versinnen baz.«
»you shall yourself bethink better.«

‚ich tâte wan daz ich enkan. 1485
‚I would-do but that I cannot.

nû wizzet ir wol, deich mînem man
now know you well, that-I to-my man

Sichêô swûr unde gehiez,
Sychaeus swore and promised,

der mir grôz gût liez
who to-me great goods left

unde michel êre,
and great honor,

daz ich nimmer, mêre 1490
that I never, more

deheinen man genâme
any man should-take

swie sô ez mir quâme.‘
how so it to-me should-come.‘

Dô sprach aber Anne
Then spoke again Anna

»ir sprechet von dem manne
»you speak of the man

alze vile âne nôt.
all-too much without need.

jâ is her manegen tach tôt.
yea is he many-a day dead.

war umbe sprechet ir daz?
where fore speak you that?

waz wâre ime deste baz,
what were to-him the better,

daz ir nû verdorbet
that you now should-perish

und tumblîche erstorbet?
and foolishly should-die?

ir endorfet ûwer leben
you need your life

dorch sînen willen niht geben:
for his will not give:

hern mohtes û niht gelônen.
he might-of-it to-you not reward.

ir solt ûwer selber schônen.
you shall your self spare.

disiu rede die ir tût
this speech which you make

diu nis û ze nihte gût.
it is to-you for naught good.

Lâzet dise rede sîn
Let this speech be

unde tuot den rât mîn,
and do the counsel mine,

daz is mêre wîsheit.
that is more wisdom.

saget mir die wârheit:
tell me the truth:

wer is der sâlige man,
who is the blessed man,

deme got der êren gan
to-whom God of-the honor grants

daz ir in welt minnen?
that you him will love?

des bringet mich innen.
of-that bring me aware.

ich wil û râten dar zû
I will to-you counsel there to

beidiu spâte unde frû,
both late and early,

wande ich û wol gûtes gan.
for I to-you well good grant.

waz ob ich solhen rât kan
what if I such counsel know

dâ ir mite berihtet sît.
where you with set-right are.

nû saget mir in, des is zît.«
now tell me him, of-that is time.«

Sie sprach ‚ichn wil ûch niht helen,
She spoke ‚I will from-you not conceal,

swester, ich wil û bevelen
sister, I will to-you commend

mîne êre und mîn leben.
my honor and my life.

ir solt mir rât dar zû geben.
you shall to-me counsel there to give.

ez is (sprach si) der man
it is (spoke she) the man

der nie gelîchen gewan.
who never equal won.

ich mûz̧ û sagen sînen namen,
I must to-you tell his name,

swie sêre sô ich mich schamen:
however sorely so I me shame:

daz̧ nennen tût mir vile wê.
the naming does to-me very woe.

her heiz̧et‘ sprach si ‚der Ê
he is-called‘ spoke she ‚the Ê

und dar nâch NÊ.‘ uber lank,
and there after NÊ.‘ over long,

alsô sie diu minne dwank,
as her the love constrained,

ê si vollesprâche AS,
ere she should-fully-speak AS,

dô weste sie wol wer er was.
then knew she well who he was.

Dô sprach aber Anne
Then spoke again Anna

»ir sprechet von dem manne,
»you speak of the man,

den ich mit ougen nie gesach.
whom I with eyes never saw.

sô ich mich verdenken mach,
as I myself bethink may,

ir nis dehein sô wol getân,
of-them is none so well made,

hern sî ein edel Troiân
unless-he be a noble Trojan

von hêreme geslehte:
of lordly lineage:

diu gelîch tût her rehte
the likeness does he rightly

mit worden und mit werken,
with words and with works,

der ez kan gemerken.
he-who it can mark.

her is scône und lussam,
he is fair and lovely,

im enmohte nieman wesen gram.
to-him might no-one be hostile.

her is frumech unde gût.
he is valiant and good.

swaz ir dorch in getût
whatever you for him do

daz enmach niht sîn verloren:
that may not be lost:

ir habet geluckelîche erkoren.
you have luckily chosen.

die gote habent in her gesant
the gods have him hither sent

dorch ûwer gûte in diz lant.«
for your goodness into this land.«

Dô sprach diu frouwe Dîdô
Then spoke the lady Dido

‚war umbe lobet irn nû sô?
‚where fore praise you-him now so?

wizzet ir, daz ir missetût?
know you, that you misdo?

her is mir ze schône und ze gût.
he is to-me too fair and too good.

ich enweiz, wer ez û riet,
I-not know, who it to-you counseled,

ir endorfet mir in loben niet
you need to-me him praise not

sô ir in mir ie mêre gelobet,
as you him to-me ever more praise,

so mîn herze ie mêre nâch im tobet
so my heart ever more after him rages

und smilzet enbinnen
and melts within

nâch den sînen minnen.‘
after the his love.‘

Anne sprach »hân ich missetân
Anna spoke »(if)-have I misdone

ich wil es gerne in bûze stân
I will of-it gladly in penance stand

und wil es gerne engelden.
and will of-it gladly pay.

sold ich den hêren schelden,
should I the lord revile,

frowe, sô mûste ich liegen.
lady, so must I lie.

ich enwil ûch niht triegen:
I will you not deceive:

welt ir bedwingen ûwern mût,
(if)-will you constrain your spirit,

ich bewîse ûch, wie ir baz tût.
I show you, how you better do.

wir soln des beginnen
we shall of-it begin

daz wir in ûwer minnen
that we him of-your love

solen innen bringen
shall aware bring

mit eteslîchen dingen.«
with some things.«

Si sprach ‚ich bin es al gereit.
She spoke ‚I am of-it all ready.

got weiz wol die wârheit,
God knows well the truth,

wie gerne ich es begonde,
how gladly I it should-begin,

ob ichz getûn konde
if I-it do could

daz ich in innen brahte,
that I him aware brought,

sô daz her nine gedahte
so that he not-at-all thought

deheines ubeles dar zû.
any evil there to.

ichn weiz waz ich dâ mite tû,
I-not know what I there with do,

ich vorhte zunmâzen
I feared beyond-measure

daz tûn und daz lâzen.‘
the doing and the leaving.‘

»waz touch diu rede danne«
»what avails the speech then«

sprach aber Anne,
spoke again Anna,

»ob irs welt missekêren?
»if you-it will misturn?

ir moget in wol mit êren
you may him well with honor

fruntlîchen ane sehen.
in-friendship at look.

irn dorfet dorch daz niht jehen,
you need for that not declare,

daz ir in iht minnet,
that you him at-all love,

unz daz her sich versinnet.
until that he himself bethinks.

her nis niht ein tumbe.
he is not a fool.

waz wizzet ir dar umbe;
what know you there about;

ob her û is von herzen holt
if he to-you is from heart devoted

und er mit manlîcher dolt
and he with manly patience

in sîme herzen minne treit
in his heart love bears

und er si niht wider ûch enreit?
and he it not toward you speaks?

diu wîb sint brôder dan die man:
the women are frailer than the men:

waz ob her baz helen kan
what if he better conceal can

unde leit gedolen mach?
and sorrow endure may?

mêr schadet û ein ubel tach
more harms to-you an evil day

dan ime tû ein ganzez jâr.«
than to-him does a whole year.«

‚ouwê' sprach sie, ‚wan wârez wâr,
‚alas' spoke she, ‚oh-that were-it true,

swester, sô moht ich genesen:
sister, so might I recover:

anders mûste ich tôt wesen.'
otherwise must I dead be.'

The Hunt Prepared

VIII

The sisters resolve to serve Aeneas well and, should he seek Dido's love, to grant it. Aeneas, though honored, keeps his heart set on Italy and says nothing of it; had Dido known, she would have grieved. She never dares to speak her love, and she resolves to ride hunting to pass the time. She is richly arrayed in the laced shift, the ermine pelisse under green samite, the green hat, the golden spurs. Aeneas leads her palfrey by the bridle, and she holds a white brachet on a silken leash, which she would have given him.

Der rât was gescheiden.
The counsel was parted.

den frouwen den was beiden
to-the ladies to-them was both

vil vaste des ze mûte,
very firmly of-it in mind,

daz sie mit allem gûte
that they with all good

des hêren wole phlâgen,
of-the lord well should-take-care,

und ob si daz gesâgen
and if they that saw

und sie des worden innen,
and they of-it became aware,

daz her deheiner minnen
that he of-any love

an frowen Dîdôn gerûchte,
on lady Dido cared,

ob herz an sie versûchte,
if he-it on her tried,

daz sie in gewerde,
that she him should-grant,

wan sis vil sêre gerde.
for she-it very sorely desired.

Ênêas der mâre
Aeneas the famous

swie wol sô her wâre
however well so he were

enphangen unde gêret,
received and honored,

her hete sô gekêret
he had so turned

sîn herze unde sînen mût,
his heart and his spirit,

daz her dorch dehein gût
that he for any goods

iemer dâ niht belibe
ever there not should-remain

noch der êren sich verscribe,
nor of-the honor himself should-sign-away,

dar umbe her wart gesant
there about he was sent

zû Italjen in daz lant.
to Italy into the land.

dâ hine was sîn wille,
there thither was his will,

des gesweich her aber stille.
of-that kept-silent he but still.

Wiste daz frou Dîdô,
Should-know that lady Dido,

sô wâre sie vil unfrô;
so were she very unglad;

ez was si harde verholen.
it was to-her very hidden.

iedoch mûste sie dolen
yet must she endure

ungemach und arbeit.
discomfort and hardship.

ir dienest was vil gereit
her service was very ready

ir liebeme gaste,
to-her dear guest,

der ir herze vaste
who her heart fast

hâte gebunden
had bound

zû zim zallen stunden
to him at-all hours

mit der minnen stricke.
with the love's snare.

bî im was si dicke
by him was she often

unde alzoges wâre gewesen.
and always were been.

ân in enmoht si niht genesen.
without him might she not recover.

sine hete deheinen gemach
she had no ease

wan sô si wider in sprach
except when she back to-him spoke

und her ir antworde,
and he to-her answered,

daz si gerne hôrde
that she gladly heard

svaz sô ez wâre.
whatever so it were.

sine getorstem offenbâre
she dared-to-him openly

niht gesagen waz si dahte
not tell what she thought

bî tage und bî nahte;
by day and by night;

sine getorsten der minne
she dared-him of-the love

niht bringen inne.
not bring aware.

sine wolde ir im niht jehen:
she would of-it to-him not declare:

si hete gerne gesehen,
she had gladly seen,

daz her des gerûchte,
that he of-it cared,

daz hers an si sûchte.
that he-it on her sought.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

alsô lange dâ gewas
so long there was

und diu frouwe Dîdô,
and the lady Dido,

daz sis niene mohte sô
that she-it not-at-all might so

geahten noch gefûgen,
contrive nor arrange,

daz si enein getrûgen
that they together bore

die minne, der si gerde,
the love, which she desired,

dô daz alsô werde
when that so became

langer dan si dûhte gût,
longer than to-her seemed good,

dô quam ir daz in ir mût,
then came to-her that into her spirit,

daz si des wart ze râte
that she of-it became to counsel

eines âbendes spâte:
one evening late:

ir mût trûch si dar zû,
her spirit bore her there to,

daz si eines morgenes frû
that she one morning early

in den walt rîten wolde
into the forest ride would

und sich banechen solde
and herself disport should

und hôren die hunde
and hear the hounds

und korzen die stunde,
and shorten the hour,

wandes was ir vile nôt.
for-of-it was to-her very need.

den meisterjageren sie gebôt,
the master-huntsmen she commanded,

si wolde rîten in den walt:
she would ride into the forest:

al wâre daz weter kalt,
though were the weather cold,

si wolde, daz man jagete.
she would, that one hunted.

êr ez volle tagete
ere it fully dawned

des morgenes vile frû
in-the morning very early

gereite sie sich dar zû.
readied she herself there to.

Dîdô diu rîche
Dido the rich

diu was hêrlîche
she was lordly

gezieret mit gewande,
adorned with clothing,

daz si in deme lande
that she in the land

vil wol gewinnen mohte
very well get might

sô ir selber tohte,
as to-her self suited,

daz ir aller beste gezam
what to-her of-all best befitted

und daz ir vil rehte quam,
and what to-her very rightly came,

mit golde und mit gesteine.
with gold and with gems.

ir hemede daz was cleine,
her shift it was fine,

wîz unde wol genât.
white and well sewn.

dar an was manich goltdrât.
there on was many-a gold-thread.

ez was gedwenget an ir lîb.
it was laced on her body.

si was ein wol geschaffen wîb,
she was a well shaped woman,

sô si baz endorfte sîn.
as she better not-needed be.

ir belliz der was hermîn,
her pelisse it was of-ermine,

wîz unde vile gût;
white and very good;

die kelen rôt alse ein blût;
the throats red as a blood;

die ermel wol ze mâzen wît, 1705
the sleeves well in measure wide,

dar ûffe ein grûner samît
there upon a green samite

nâch ir lîbe wol gesniten.
after her body well cut.

daz hete si ungerne vermiten.
that had she unwillingly forgone.

her was wol gezieret
it was well adorned

und vil wol gezimieret 1710
and very well trimmed

mit berlen unde borden,
with pearls and braids,

die dar zû gehôrden.
which there to belonged.

vile wol her ir gezam,
very well it to-her befitted,

dô sie in an sich genam.
when she it on herself took.

dâ si sich mite gorde
what she herself with girded

daz was ein tûre borde
that was a costly braid

geworht als si wolde
wrought as she would

mit silber und mit golde.
with silver and with gold.

Ir mantel der was
Her mantle it was

ein samît grûne als ein gras;
a samite green as a grass;

diu vedere wîz hermîn
the lining white ermine

daz si niht bezer mohte sîn.
that it not better might be.

der zobel brûn unde breit.
the sable brown and broad.

dorch daz si jagen reit
because that she hunting rode

sone was der mantel niht lank.
so was the mantle not long.

si weste wole waz si dwank.
she knew well what her constrained.

wol was si gebunden,
well was she bound,

ir hâr was ir bewunden
her hair was to-her wound

mit einem borden der was gût.
with a braid which was good.

dô brahte man ir einen hût,
then brought one to-her a hat,

mit grûnem samîte bezogen.
with green samite covered.

daz vernemet vor wâr ungelogen,
that hear for true unlied,

ein borde was alumbe drane.
a braid was all-about thereon.

si wâre vil gerne dane,
she were very gladly thence,

ir was vil liebe zû der jaget.
to-her was very dear to the hunt.

ich ne weiz, wie manich maget
I not know, how many-a maiden

mit ir ze varne was gereit.
with her to fare was ready.

daz si niht schiere enreit
that she not quickly rode

daz was ir leit unde zorn.
that was to-her sorrow and wrath.

zwêne goldîne sporn
two golden spurs

het man ir an gespannen.
had one to-her on buckled.

dô si mit ir mannen
when she with her men

quam gegangen zû dem tore,
came walking to the gate,

dô vant si Ênêam dervore
then found she Aeneas there-before

unde sîne geselleschaft.
and his company.

grôz was ir ritterschaft.
great was their knighthood.

si wâren frû dare komen.
they were early thither come.

die jaget heten si wol vernomen
the hunt had they well heard

und si hete ez ime enboten.
and she had it to-him announced.

rôt golt wol gesoten
red gold well refined

lûhte wider den tach,
shone against the day,

daz an ir gewande lach
that on her clothing lay

unde an ir gesmîde,
and on her ornaments,

golt unde sîde
gold and silk

was vil an ir gewant.
was much on her clothing.

dô, sie Ênêam vant,
when, she Aeneas found,

dô was ir vile deste baz.
then was to-her very the better.

her diende ir dâ si ûf saz.
he served her where she up sat.

Dô si ûf daz pharit quam,
When she onto the palfrey came,

mit dem zoume sie nam
by the bridle her took

Ênêas der mâre,
Aeneas the famous,

des si dô niht enbâre
which she then not would-forgo

umbe ein vile michel dink.
for a very great thing.

dô leite sie der jungelink.
then led her the youngling.

des was ir herze vile frô.
of-that was her heart very glad.

dô fûrde frouwe Dîdô
then led lady Dido

einen bracken vil gereht,
a brachet very skilled,

den enliez si deheinen kneht
which let she no servant

gestreichen noch gerûren,
stroke nor touch,

si wolden selbe fûren.
she would-it herself lead.

daz entet si niht dorch nôt.
that did she not for need.

daz ein ôre was im rôt,
the one ear was to-it red,

daz ander swarz und der munt.
the other black and the mouth.

ez was ein vil edel hunt
it was a very noble hound

und was wîz alse ein harm:
and was white as an ermine:

si warf daz seil umbe den arm
she cast the leash about the arm

sô lîse daz ez si niene dwank.
so lightly that it her not-at-all pressed.

ez was vast und gnûch lank,
it was firm and enough long,

geflohten vone sîden,
braided of silk,

ez̧n mohte si niht gesnîden
it might her not cut

an den arm noch an die hant
on the arm nor on the hand

noch zefûren ir gewant.
nor tear her clothing.

diu halse was ein borde,
the collar was a braid,

diu dar zû gehôrde.
which there to belonged,

ze mâz̧en enge unde wît.
in measure narrow and wide.

enbinnen was ein samît
within was a samite

dar ane genât vaste,
there on sewn fast,

sie het ez̧ ir gaste
she had it to-her guest

gegeben, wolderz̧ haben genomen,
given, would-he-it have taken,

ê si ûz̧ der borch wâre komen.
ere she out-of the castle were come.

The Storm in the Forest

IX

Dido rides beside Aeneas, like Diana beside Phoebus, and the hunt goes well until a storm at midday scatters the company. Only Aeneas stays with her; under a tree he takes her, as Venus counseled. She is glad to be healed of love's wound and sorry to have yielded so quickly. They hide it a while, then she marries him openly with a great feast to cover her shame. The lords she once refused, now hostile, mock her for taking the banished Trojan, and she cares nothing for what anyone says.

Frou Dîdô was des vil gemeit,
Lady Dido was of-it very glad,

daz der hêre Ênêas bî ir reit
that the lord Aeneas by her rode

mit sînen Troiânen.
with his Trojans.

si gelîchete Dîânen
she resembled Diana

der gotin von dem wilde.
the goddess of the game.

ir herze daz was milde
her heart it was gentle

von des hêren minnen.
from the lord's love.

des brahte sie in innen,
of-that brought she him aware,

êr her quâme wider ze hûs.
ere he should-come back to house.

her reit ouch alse Phêbûs,
he rode also like Phoebus,

ein got vile hêre.
a god very lordly.

diu minne dwanc si sêre.
the love constrained her sorely.

Die den wech kunden,
Those-who the way knew,

die wîsten nâch den hunden,
they led after the hounds,

dâ si vore giengen.
where they before went.

des tages sie geviengen
that day they caught

wildes gnûch unde vile
of-game enough and much

zû vil gûteme spile,
for very good sport,

dô wâren si alle ensament frô.
then were they all together glad.

ez quam ouch vil dicke sô,
it came also very often so,

daz man daz wilt fliehen sach.
that one the game flee saw.

ez quam umbe den mitten tach
there came about the mid day

ein weter vile freissam,
a weather very fearsome,

daz von den wolken nider quam
which from the clouds down came

mit storme und mit winden.
with storm and with winds.

des mûsten manegen enden
of-that must in-many directions

gesundert werden balde
parted be quickly

di gesellen in dem walde.
the comrades in the forest.

die winde wâren vile grôz.
the winds were very great.

vile starke ez nider gôz
very strongly it down poured

hagel unde regen naz.
hail and rain wet.

der frouwen man dô vergaz
of-the lady one then forgot

dorch daz weter freissam.
for the weather fearsome.

nieman weste war si quam,
no-one knew whither she came,

wan der hêre Ênêas,
except the lord Aeneas,

mit dem si gerne eine was.
with whom she gladly alone was.

do gesâgen si einen boum stân
then saw they a tree stand

dicken unde wol getân,
thick and well made,

dar zû quâmen sie zehant.
there to came they at-once.

dô half der mâre wîgant
then helped the famous warrior

der frouwen zû der erden
the lady to the earth

dô mûste daz werden,
then must that become,

des lange gegeret was.
which long desired was.

dô nam der hêre Ênêas
then took the lord Aeneas

die frouwen under sîn gewant.
the lady under his clothing.

wol geschaffen her si vant.
well shaped he her found.

her begreif si mit den armen.
he seized her with the arms.

do begunde ime irwarmen
then began to-him to-grow-warm

al sîn fleisch und sîn blût.
all his flesh and his blood.

dô heter manlîchen mût,
then had-he manly spirit,

dâ mite gwan er di oberen hant;
there with won he the upper hand;

der frouwen her sich underwant.
of-the lady he himself took-charge.

in ne was nieman nâ,
to-them — was no-one near,

si beidiu wâren eine dâ.
they both were alone there.

vile schône was diu stat.
very fair was the place.

minnechlîche her si bat,
lovingly he her asked,

daz si in gewerde
that she him should-grant

des si selbe gerde,
what she herself desired,

(iedoch sprach si dar wider)
(yet spoke she there against)

und er legete sie dar nider,
and he laid her there down,

alsez Vênûs geriet:
as-it Venus counseled:

sine mohte sich erweren niet.
she might herself defend not.

her tete ir daz her wolde,
he did to-her what he would,

sô daz her ir holde
so that he her favor

manlîche behielt.
manfully kept.

ir wizzet wol, waz des gewielt.
you know well, what of-it happened.

Dô ez alsô was komen,
When it so was come,

alsir wole habet vernomen,
as-you well have heard,

und daz si solden rîten,
and that they should ride,

dô was in korzen zîten
then was in short times

ir gewant worden naz.
their clothing become wet.

iedoch was ir vile baz
yet was to-her very better

dan si dâ heime wâre beliben.
than she there at-home were remained.

daz tier was rehte getriben.
the beast was rightly driven.

sô der man sô schûzet
as the man so shoots

daz her sîn genûzet,
that he of-it profits,

sô liebet ime diu vart.
so pleases to-him the journey.

dô ez wider weter wart,
when it again weather became,

und daz der regen vore quam,
and that the rain over came,

under sîn arme her si nam
under his arm he her took

und hûb sin daz gereite.
and raised her-onto the saddle.

al der arbeite
all the hardship

lônde im minnechlîche
rewarded to-him lovingly

Dîdô diu rîche.
Dido the rich.

Dô was diu frouwe Dîdô
Then was the lady Dido

beidiu rouwich unde frô.
both rueful and glad.

ich sage û, wes si frô was:
I tell to-you, of-what she glad was:

daz sie der wunden genas,
that she of-the wound recovered,

dâ si unsanfte mite qual,
where she ungently with suffered,

die wîle siz Ênêam hal;
the while she-it from-Aeneas hid;

und was iedoch des unfrô,
and was yet of-it unglad,

daz si sô schiere alsô
that she so quickly so

sînen willen getete
his will did

dorch sô wênige bete.
for so little asking.

ez tetir aber grôze nôt,
it did-to-her but great need,

si mûste anders wesen tôt.
she must otherwise be dead.

diu froude enwâre ir wider komen,
the joy not-were to-her back come,

dâ mite sie ir was benomen
where with it from-her was taken

dô si sô sêre wunt wart.
when she so sorely wounded became.

daz is der rehten minnen art.
that is the right love's nature.

ez is genûgen wole kunt,
it is to-many well known,

swen si rehte machet wunt,
whom she rightly makes wounded,

sal her iemer wol genesen,
(if)-shall he ever well recover,

daz mûz mit ir helfe wesen.
that must with her help be.

Ir was gesenftet ein teil,
To-her was eased a part,

iedoch enwas niht heil
yet was not whole

diu wunde von der strâlen.
the wound from the arrow.

daz vil harde hâlen
that very greatly hid

Dîdô unde Ênêas,
Dido and Aeneas,

daz ez alsô komen was.
that it so come was.

ein wîle hâlen sie die tât,
a while hid they the deed,

daz si ime ir êre unde ir rât
that she to-him her honor and her counsel

alsô hâte bevolen.
so had commended.

ez̧n moht niht langer sîn verholen,
it might not longer be hidden,

daz̧ si alsô schûfen ir gemach.
that they so made their ease.

dô daz̧ mâre ûz̧ gebrach,
when the tale out broke,

daz̧ diu frouwe Dîdô
that the lady Dido

geworben hete alsô,
wooed had so,

daz̧ Ênêas was ir trût,
that Aeneas was her beloved,

dô wart si offenbâre brût
then became she openly bride

und machete michel hôzît.
and made great wedding-feast.

diu wart mâre unde wît
which became famous and wide

in alleme lande,
in all land,

wande sie die schande
for she the disgrace

dâ mite beschônen wolde,
there with gloss-over would,

als sie mit rehte solde,
as she with right should,

die si begienc in deme walt.
which she committed in the forest.

si wart dô kûne unde balt
she became then bold and brave

und tet dô sînen willen
and did then his will

offenbâre und stille.
openly and quietly.

Dô daz mâre ûz quam,
When the tale out came,

dô worden ir vile gram
then became to-her very hostile

die hêren after lande.
the lords throughout land.

si sprâchen ir grôze schande.
they spoke to-her great disgrace.

si heten vile wol vernomen,
they had very well heard,

wie si dar zû was komen,
how she there to was come,

und heten vile wol gehôrt
and had very well heard

diu manegiu schamelîchiu wort,
the many shameful words,

diu si den hêren zû sprach
which she to-the lords to spoke

unde in nihtes verjach,
and to-them of-naught granted,

die des gerûchten,
who of-it cared,

daz sir minne sûchten
that they-her love sought

stille und offenbâre.
quietly and openly.

ez was ir unmâre
it was to-her indifferent

arme unde rîche:
poor and rich:

si hete in al gelîche
she had them all alike

versaget unde sie verkoren
refused and them rejected

unde sprach, si hetez versworen
and spoke, she had-it forsworn

dorch ir êresten man,
for her first man,

dâ si vil vînde abe gewan.
whence she many foes from won.

sie hazeten sie vil sêre
they hated her very sorely

und rieten ir an ir êre
and counseled to-her on her honor

beidiu spâte unde frû.
both late and early.

si sprâchen ir hônlîche zû.
they spoke to-her scornfully to.

dô der hêre Ênêas
when the lord Aeneas

ir man worden was,
her man become was,

si sprâchen, ez wâre rehte komen,
they spoke, it were rightly come,

daz si hâte genomen
that she had taken

den vertriben Troiâre:
the banished Trojan:

ez was ir ummâre
it was to-her indifferent

swaz ieman dar umbe gesprach:
whatever anyone there about spoke:

si liez êre unde gemach
she let honor and ease

al zeiner hant gân,
all at-one hand go,

dô siz hâte getân.
when she-it had done.

Aeneas Is Bidden Away

X

At the height of Aeneas's power the gods command him to leave, and he secretly readies his ships, fearing Dido will stop him. She learns of it and confronts him, saying she must now slay herself; he pleads the gods' command and swears he would stay if he could withstand them. She faints in his arms, and when she revives she laments that she has no child by him and that the lords hate her, then reviles him as born of dragons and reared by wolves.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

dâ vil gewaldeclîchen was
there very mightily was

unde geminnet was dâ,
and loved was there,

in korzen zîten dar nâ,
in short times there after,

do ez allez stunt ze sîme gebote,
when it all stood at his command,

dô enboten ime die gote
then sent-word to-him the gods

ein vil starkez mâre,
a very strong tale,

daz her des sicher wâre,
that he of-it certain were,

her mûste varen dannen
he must fare thence

mit den sînen mannen,
with the his men,

des enmohte dehein rât wesen,
of-that might no counsel be,

ober iemer wolde genesen,
if-he ever would survive,

daz her niene beite
that he not-at-all should-wait

unde sich gereite,
and himself should-ready,

daz her daz lant rûmde
that he the land should-leave

und sich nine versûmde,
and himself not-at-all should-neglect,

als im der wint worde gût.
when to-him the wind should-become good.

des wart betrûbet sîn mût.
of-that became troubled his spirit.

Hern getorstez widerreden niet.
He dared-it gainsay not.

swâslîchen her geriet
secretly he took-counsel

mit den sînen holden,
with the his liegemen,

di im dar zû râten solden
who to-him there to counsel should

und getrûwelîchen wîsen.
and faithfully guide.

sîniu schif hiez er spîsen,
his ships bade he victual,

gereiten unde stihten
ready and order

und vil wol berihten.
and very well set-right.

geswâslîch er daz ahte.
secretly he that considered.

vil wol her daz bedahte, 1980
very well he that bethought,

vernâmez frouwe Dîdô,
should-hear-it lady Dido,

daz si vile unfrô
that she very unglad

dar umbe solde werden.
there about should become.

hern weste ûf der erden,
he-not knew on the earth,

wie herz ane vienge, 1985
how he-it at should-begin,

daz ez wol ergienge,
that it well should-happen,

daz her dannen quâme.
that he thence should-come.

her forhte, ob siz vernâme,
he feared, if she-it should-hear,

daz si ez wenden wolde
that she it turn would

und er dâ wesen solde 1990
and he there be should

unde in lezte deste mê.
and him should-hinder the more.

daz scheiden tete ime wê,
the parting did to-him woe,

iedoch mûster dannen varen,
yet must-he thence fare,

des enmohte her sich niht bewaren.
of-that might he himself not guard.

Done dahte niht frou Dîdô,
Then thought not lady Dido,

daz her si iemer alsô
that he her ever so

verlâzen solde und begeben,
forsake should and give-up,

die wîle si beidiu mohten leben.
the while they both might live.

dar nâch was vil unlank,
there after was very short,

êr daz mâre ûz gesprank,
ere the tale out sprang,

daz ez dô sô verre quam,
that it then so far came,

daz siz rehte vernam
that she-it rightly heard

diu mâre frouwe Dîdô.
the famous lady Dido.

dô wart sie vil unfrô,
then became she very unglad,

wandez ê tet ir diu nôt,
for-it before did to-her the distress,

si was zehant vil nâch tôt.
she was at-once very nearly dead.

dô siz rehte vernam,
when she-it rightly heard,

alsez ir doch sint quam,
as-it to-her yet since came,

daz sie sich selbe erslûch,
that she her self slew,

daz was ir dannoch frû genûch
that was to-her still early enough

unde ein michel teil ze frû.
and a great part too early.

dô ez komen was dar zû,
when it come was there to,

daz siz rehte vernam,
that she-it rightly heard,

zû Ênêase sie quam.
to Aeneas she came.

aller ir sinne sie vergaz,
all her senses she forgot,

unsanfte sie bî ime gesaz,
ungently she by him sat,

si weinde vile sêre,
she wept very sorely,

si sprach ‚habt ir des êre,
she spoke ‚have you of-it honor,

daz ir den lîb mir wellet nemen?
that you the life from-me will take?

wie mag û daz wol gezemen?
how may to-you that well befit?

ez is mir ein ubel spot.‘
it is to-me an evil mockery.‘

her sprach »nû ne welle got,
he spoke »now not will God,

daz ich daz iemêr getû.«
that I that ever do.«

‚ouwê, jâ gereitet ir ûch dar zû.‘
‚alas, yea ready you yourself there to.‘

»ich wil ez gerne bewaren.«
»I will it gladly avoid.«

,leider jâ welt ir hinnen varen
,sadly yea will you hence fare

verholenlîchen alse ein dieb.‘
secretly as a thief.‘

»frouwe, daz nis mir niht lieb,
»lady, that is to-me not dear,

ez is mir leit daz ich ez tû.«
it is to-me grievous that I it do.«

,saget, wer dwinget ûch dar zû?‘
,say, who constrains you there to?‘

»die gote enlânt mich hie niht sîn.«
»the gods let me here not be.«

,ir getrôstet ûch wol mîn.‘
,you comfort yourself well of-me.‘

»frowe, ichn hâns deheinen rât.«
»lady, I have-of-it no counsel.«

si sprach ,ouwê der missetât,
she spoke ,alas for-the misdeed,

der ich mit û hân getân!
which I with you have done!

ez mûz mir ubele ergân.
it must to-me badly go.

daz is von mîner scholde:
that is from my fault:

wie hân ich ûwer holde
how have I your favor

sus wunderlîchen verloren!
so wondrously lost!

daz ich ie wart geboren,
that I ever was born,

ez mach mich balde rouwen.
it may me quickly rue.

ich mûz mîner trouwen
I must for-my faith

engelden vile sêre,
pay very sorely,

daz ich û gût und êre
that I to-you good and honor

getân hân manegen tach,
done have many-a day,

sint ich ûch von êrist sach.‘
since I you at first saw.‘

Dô sprach barmechlîche
Then spoke pitifully

Ênêas der rîche
Aeneas the rich

‚frowe, ne weinet niht mê!
‚lady, — weep not more!

mir tût unmâzen wê
to-me does beyond-measure woe

ûwer clage die ir tût.
your lament which you make.

got lône û allez daz gût,
God reward to-you all the good,

daz ir mir dicke habet getân.
that you to-me often have done.

solde ez an mir stân,
should it on me stand,

von û geschiede ich niemer.
from you should-part I never.

ich enweiz, ob mich iemer
I-not know, whether me ever

got dare gesende,
God thither should-send,

dâ ich frunt vinde,
where I friend find,

alsich nû mûz lâzen hie.
as-I now must leave here.

ich engewan noch nie
I won yet never

deheines wîbes kunde,
of-any woman acquaintance,

an der ich mêr funde
in whom I more found

minne unde trouwe.
love and faith.

des is, liebiu frouwe,
of-that is, dear lady,

mîme herzen vil leide,
to-my heart very grievous,

daz ich von û scheide.‘
that I from you part.‘

Dô sprach diu frouwe Dîdô
Then spoke the lady Dido

‚war umbe trôstet ir mich sô
‚where fore comfort you me so

daz mich gehelfen niene mach?
what me help not-at-all may?

ouwê, daz ich ûch ie gesach!
alas, that I you ever saw!

wannen kumet mir der sin,
whence comes to-me the sense,

daz ich û alsus holt bin
that I to-you thus devoted am

sô harde ûzer mâzen,
so very beyond measure,

nû ir mich welt lâzen?
now you me will leave?

daz is ein michel untât.
that is a great misdeed.

jâ ne was ez niht mîn rât,
yea — was it not my counsel,

daz man Troie zerbrach,
that one Troy broke,

dâ mir sô grôz ungemach
whereby to-me so great discomfort

ane was gehalden.
on was held.

waz sal des nû gewalden?
what shall of-it now prevail?

hazzet den der ez geriet.
hate him who it counseled.

ichn slûch ouch ûwern vater niet.‘
I slew also your father not.‘

»nein ir, frouwe, weiz got,
»no you, lady, knows God,

in nam der gemeine tôt.
him took the common death.

wie soldet ir daz gerâten,
how should you that counsel,

daz die Kriechen tâten,
what the Greeks did,

die Troie zerbrâchen
who Troy broke

unde ir zorn râchen?
and their wrath avenged?

ir sît es alles âne scholt.
you are of-it all without fault.

ichn wart nieman sô holt,
I became to-no-one so devoted,

sô ich û bin unde was.«
as I to-you am and was.«

‚ouwê, hêre Ênêas,
‚alas, lord Aeneas,

ob daz wâr wâre,
if that true were,

daz wâre bezzer mâre,
that were better tidings,

dan after lande nû sal gân,
than throughout land now shall go,

daz ich mich selbe mûz erslân.‘
that I me self must slay.‘

»nein ir,« sprach her, »frouwe,
»no you,« spoke he, »lady,

dorch die grôzen trouwe,
for the great faith,

die ir mir habet bescheinet,
which you to-me have shown,

ich weiz waz ir meinet,
I know what you mean,

sehet, daz ir es niht entût.
see, that you it not do.

ûwer leben is noch gût,
your life is yet good,

ir sît noch ein junk wîb,
you are yet a young woman,

niht verlieset ûren lîb,
not lose your body,

ez wâre schade vile grôz.
it were harm very great.

daz ich ûwer ie genôz,
that I of-you ever enjoyed,

des mûze û got lônen.
for-that may to-you God reward.

irn welt ûr selber schônen,
unless-you will your self spare,

sô ne moget ir niht genesen:
so — may you not recover:

desn mach ander rât wesen.« 2110
of-that-not may other counsel be.«

Si sprach ,was touch diu unscholt,
She spoke ,what avails the innocence,

daz ir sprechet ir sît mir holt?
that you say you are to-me devoted?

sone weiz ich waz daz meinet,
so-not know I what that means,

daz ir mir bescheinet
that you to-me show

sô grôze unminne; 2115
so great unlove;

daz ir welt hinnen
that you will hence

varen ûwer strâzen
fare your roads

unde mich hie lâzen,
and me here leave,

daz is mir leit unde zorn.
that is to-me sorrow and wrath.

ich hân mîn dienest verlorn. 2120
I have my service lost.

daz rouwet mich sêre,
that rues me sorely,

daz ich û gût und êre
that I to-you good and honor

alsô vile hân erboten.
so much have offered.

ir saget mir von ûwern goten
you tell me of your gods

unde machet ûch diu gût, 2125
and make yourself them good,

daz ir niht entût
that you naught do

niwan daz si gerâten,
except what they counsel,

die û lutzel êren tâten,
who to-you little honors did,

dô ir unde ûwer here
when you and your host

fûret swebende ûf dem mere,
fared floating on the sea,

dô si ûch dâ quelen liezen:
when they you there torment let:

done mohtet ir es niht geniezen,
then might you of-it not profit,

daz ir ir mâch wâret.
that you their kinsman were.

daz ir nû sus gebâret
that you now thus behave

unde ir rât sus gerne tût,
and their counsel thus gladly do,

dazn is niht dorch mîn gût.'
that is not for my good.'

Si sprach ‚ich weiz wol war ez gât,
She spoke ‚I know well whither it goes,

sint mîn rede nû niht vervât.
since my speech now not avails.

nû ir dorch den willen mîn
now you for the will mine

niht langer hie welt sîn,
not longer here will be,

nû dunket aber mich daz gût,
now seems but to-me that good,

daz irz dorch ûch selben tût,
that you-it for you self do,

dorch ûres lîbes minne.
for your body's love.

wan fûret ir nû hinnen,
for (if)-fare you now hence,

ez solde û an daz leben gân.
it should to-you on the life go.

daz mere is freissam getân,
the sea is fearsome made,

die unde gênt vile hô.
the waves go very high.

niht enzornet ir mir sô,
not anger you me so,

daz ir ûrn lîb iet verlieset
that you your body at-all lose

unde den tôt kieset.
and the death choose.

des bedenket ûch baz.'
of-that bethink you better.'

her sprach »frowe, waz hilfet daz?
he spoke »lady, what helps that?

al ensoldich nimmer genesen,
though should-I never survive,

desn mach ander rât wesen.
of-that-not may other counsel be.

[moht ich den goten widerstân,
[*might I the gods withstand,*

ich hete ez gerne getân.«]
I had it gladly done.«]

zû dem êrsten worde;
at the first word;

dô si dô gehôrde,
when she then heard,

daz her niht baz was bedaht,
that he not better was minded,

dô viel sie in unmaht.
then fell she into swoon.

under sîn arme her si nam,
under his arms he her took,

unz ir daz herze wider quam.
until to-her the heart back came.

her sprach ir minnechlîche zû
he spoke to-her lovingly to

‚frouwe, daz ich daz tû,
‚lady, that I that do,

daz ich von û scheide,
that I from you part,

des gedenke ich mir vil leide.
of-that think I to-myself very sorrowfully.

esn mach ander rât sîn.
of-it-not may other counsel be.

stundez an dem willen mîn,
stood-it on the will mine,

ichn quâme nimmer hinnen:
I should-come never hence:

ich mûz von ûwern minnen
I must from your love

vil unfrôlîchen leben.
very joylessly live.

ir solt ez mir dorch got vergeben,
you shall it to-me for God forgive,

daz ich dar ane missetû:
that I there on misdo:

diu nôt dwinget mich dar zû.‘
the distress constrains me there to.‘

Dô sprach aber Dîdô
Then spoke again Dido

‚war umbe smeichet ir nû sô?
‚where fore flatter you now so?

jane vervât ez niht ein blat:
yea avails it not a leaf:

ir sît mîn schiere worden sat.
you are of-me quickly become sated.

mir is leit daz ich ûch ie gesach.
to-me is grievous that I you ever saw.

ichn hân daz kint noch den mâch
I have the child nor the kinsman

niender in dem lande.
nowhere in the land.

man wecket mir grôze schande,
one wakes to-me great disgrace,

sint daz ich ûch genam.
since that I you took.

die hêren sint mir alle gram:
the lords are to-me all hostile:

den ich versagete wîlen ê,
whom I refused formerly before,

die ne gerent mîn nû niht mê.
they — desire me now not more.

soldich lebendich blîben,
should-I living remain,

si solden mich vertrîben
they should me drive-out

oder brennen unde heren.
or burn and harry.

ich ne moht mich niht erweren,
I — might myself not defend,

wand die scholde sint mîn.
for the faults are mine.

hetet ir doch ein kindelîn
had you yet a little-child

an mir gewunnen!
on me won!

ob mir got des hete gegunnen,
if to-me God of-it had granted,

do ich mîner êren sô vergaz,
when I my honors so forgot,

mir wâre vile deste baz.
to-me were very the better.

leider nû enis des niet.
sadly now is of-it naught.

daz mir mîn herze ie sô geriet,
that to-me my heart ever so counseled,

daz ich ûch sô tumblîche nam,
that I you so foolishly took,

des mûz ich im immer wesen gram.‘
of-that must I to-it ever be hostile.‘

Her trûrde und si weinde.
He mourned and she wept.

wie wol sim daz bescheinde,
how well she-to-him that showed,

daz si unsanfte minne trûch!
that she ungentle love bore!

dô sin gelobete genûch;
then she-him praised enough;

dô begunde sie in schelden.
then began she him to-revile.

sie sprach ‚ich mûz des engelden,
she spoke ‚I must for-it pay,

daz ich ûch hân geêret.
that I you have honored.

daz habet ir mir gekêret
that have you to-me turned

ze grôzen missewenden.
to great misfortunes.

ichn mach an û vinden
I may in you find

genâden nehein teil.
of-grace no part.

daz is mîn unheil
that is my misfortune

und grôzes ungeluckes scholt.
and of-great misfortune guilt.

mir wâren ie die lûte holt
to-me were ever the people devoted

die mich erkanden:
who me knew:

ir solt ûch mîner schanden
you shall yourself of-my disgrace

vil gemeit machen.
very glad make.

ir sît geboren von trachen,
you are born of dragons,

irn wordet von lûten nie geboren.
you were of people never born.

ir habet die barmecheit verloren,
you have the pity lost,

ûr herze is âne minne.
your heart is without love.

Vênûs diu gotinne
Venus the goddess

ne wart ûwer mûder nie.
— was your mother never.

ich genam ûch unheiles ie,
I took you to-misfortune ever,

daz ir mich sus habet betrogen.
that you me thus have deceived.

ir wordet under wolfen zogen.
you were among wolves reared.

û erbarmet daz niet,
to-you pities that not,

daz ir mich sus quelen siet.
that you me thus torment see.

ich wâne ûr herze is steinen,
I ween your heart is of-stone,

daz ir mich sus lât weinen.‘
that you me thus let weep.‘

Aeneas Sails, and Dido Dies

XI

Aeneas sails, and Dido spends her most sorrowful day. Claiming an offering to Venus, she has a fire built and burns Aeneas's gifts and their bedding, sends Anna for a sorceress, locks the door, and throws in his horn and scabbard. She laments, stabs herself with the sword he left, falls into the flames, and dying forgives him. Anna returns, sees her through a hole, and laments; help comes too late. Her ashes are laid in a golden vessel in an inscribed prase coffin. Aeneas never knew she would kill herself for love.

Dô der rede vile was,
When of-the speech much was,

dô mûst der hêre Ênêas
then must the lord Aeneas

ze jungest varen dannen
at last fare thence

mit den sînen mannen,
with the his men,

swie ez ir geviele.
however it to-her should-please.

her hiez sîne kiele
he bade his keels

machen alsô gereit.
make so ready.

dô quam er ûf daz mere breit
then came he onto the sea broad

mit sînen Troiâren.
with his Trojans.

diu schif hiezer mâren.
the ships bade-he moor.

dô si sich gehûben an,
when they themselves raised on,

dô treib sie der wint dan,
then drove them the wind away,

der in den segel quam geflogen,
which into the sail came flying,

den si heten ûf gezogen.
which they had up drawn.

daz was der leidiste tach,
that was the most-sorrowful day,

den frou Dîdô ie gesach.
which lady Dido ever saw.

si was vil ubele bedaht.
she was very ill minded.

sie viel dicke in unmaht,
she fell often into swoon,

diu rouwe gienk ir vile nâ,
the rue went to-her very near,

sie ne hete ir frouwen dâ
she — had of-her ladies there

gelâzen deheine,
left none,

sunder alders eine
except all alone

ir swester Annen.
her sister Anna.

die selben sande si dannen
the same sent she thence

mit vil argem liste.
with very wicked cunning.

sie sprach ‚Annâ swester,
she spoke ‚Anna sister,

hâst dû daz wunder gesehen?
hast thou the wonder seen?

nû mahtû wole jehen,
now mayst-thou well declare,

daz mir vil leides was beschert
that to-me much of-sorrow was allotted

sihestû wâ her hine vert
seest-thou where he away fares

der ungetrouwe Ênêas,
the faithless Aeneas,

der mir lieber was
who to-me dearer was

denne mîn selber lîb?
than my own body?

in der borch is ein wîb,
in the castle is a woman,

diu starke zouber kan,
who strong magic knows,

sô nie dehein man
as never any man

ir gelîche nie gesach.
her equal ever saw.

ich erkenne si manegen tach:
I know her many-a day:

die saltû mir gewinnen.
her shalt-thou for-me win.

sie weiz vil von minnen,
she knows much of love,

vil von erzenîe;
much of medicine;

si hât in philosophîe
she has in philosophy

ir flîz gekêret;
her zeal turned;

si is sô wol gelêret,
she is so well learned,

daz nie wîb wîser wart.
that never woman wiser became.

si weiz wol allen den art
she knows well all the nature

vone den plânêten.
of the planets.

si gelîchet den prophêten.
she resembles the prophets.

si kan an den sternen sehen,
she can on the stars see,

swaz iemanne sal geschehen,
whatever to-anyone shall happen,

und kan wunderes vil
and knows of-wonders much

und tût swenne sô si wil,
and does whenever so she will,

daz der mâne zergêt,
that the moon wanes,

swenner ir ze mûte gestêt,
whenever-it to-her in mind stands,

und nimet der sunnen ir schîn.
and takes from-the sun its shine.

die gwin mir, liebiu swester mîn,
her win for-me, dear sister mine,

si sal mir râten her zû,
she shall to-me counsel here to,

mit welhen dingen ich daz tû,
with which things I that do,

daz mir Ênêas erleide
that to-me Aeneas should-become-loathsome

unde ich mîn herze scheide
and I my heart should-part

von sînen minnen,
from his love,

wandez brinnet innen.‘
for-it burns within.‘

Dô sprach si aber mê:
Then spoke she again more:

‚swester, mir is sô wê
‚sister, to-me is so woe

umbe den leiden lieben man,
about the loathsome dear man,

daz ichs gesagen niene kan
that I-of-it tell not-at-all can

sô daz ez mir tohte.
so that it to-me should-avail.

al kunde ich, ich ne mohte,
though could I, I not might,

und mohte ich, ich ne wolde,
and might I, I not would,

wand ich enkunde die scholde
for I could the guilt

ûf nieman anderen gesagen:
on no-one other say:

mich hât mîn selber wille erslagen.
me has my own will slain.

ichn mach si nieman gegeben,
I may it to-no-one give,

ich mûz mîn unsenftez leben
I must my ungentle life

an mir selber rechen.
on me self avenge.

ichn mach daz niht gesprechen
I may that not say

daz ez iemannes scholt sî.
that it anyone's guilt be.

Annâ, nû stant mir bî
Anna, now stand me by

an mîner swester stat.
in my sister's stead.

daz wîb, dar ich dich umbe bat,
the woman, whom I thee about asked,

die salt dû mir bringen
her shalt thou to-me bring

mit gûtlîchen dingen
with kindly things

mit listlîchen sachen.
with cunning matters.

ich mûz ein opher machen
I must an offering make

dem gote von der minne
to-the god of the love

und Venerî der gotinne,
and Venus the goddess,

daz si mir genâde tû.
that she to-me grace do.

swester, dâ hôret zû
sister, there belongs to

ein fûre grôz unde heiz.
a fire great and hot.

daz ich sô vil dar umbe weiz,
what I so much there about know,

daz mach ich balde gote klagen.‘
that may I quickly to-God lament.‘

dô hiez si holz dare tragen
then bade she wood thither carry

und machtez fûre drunder.
and made-it fire there-under.

si frumde michel wunder.
she wrought great wonder.

Dô si daz fûre enbrande,
When she the fire kindled,

Annen sie dô sande
Anna she then sent

nâch allen Ênêases geben.
after all Aeneas's gifts.

si sprach, sin wolde niht leben,
she spoke, she would not live,

sine hetez allez verbrant,
unless-she had-it all burned,

und ouch daz bettegewant,
and also the bedding,

dâ si ûffe lâgen
where they upon lay

und ir minne pflâgen,
and their love practiced,

si und der hêre Ênêas.
she and the lord Aeneas.

Annâ gienk da ez allez was
Anna went where it all was

und brahtez allez sament dar.
and brought-it all together thither.

Dîdô was ubile gevar,
Dido was ill colored,

wande si ubile gedahte.
for she ill thought.

dô ez Annâ dar brahte,
when it Anna thither brought,

dar si si hete nâch gesant,
what she her had after sent,

daz wart vil schiere verbrant.
that was very quickly burned.

Dô siz hâte getân,
When she-it had done,

dô hiez ’sis nâch dem wîbe gân,
then bade she-her after the woman go,

daz si si balde brehte
that she her quickly should-bring

unde des gedehte,
and of-it should-bethink,

daz ir angest wâre grôz.
that her fear were great.

die ture sie nâch ir beslôz,
the door she after her locked,

si rach unsanfte ir zorn.
she avenged ungently her wrath.

dô hete Ênêas ein horn
then had Aeneas a horn

dâ verlâzen unde ein swert,
there left and a sword,

daz was maneges phundes wert,
that was of-many-a pound worth,

dar ane erkûlde sie ir mût.
there on cooled she her spirit.

si warf daz horn in die glût
she cast the horn into the glow

und die swertscheide.
and the scabbard.

si gedahte ir vile leide,
she thought to-herself very sorrowfully,

michel was ir ungemach.
great was her discomfort.

unfrôlîchen sie sprach
joylessly she spoke

,ouwê, hêre Ênêas,
,alas, lord Aeneas,

wie gewaldech ich was,
how mighty I was,

dô ich ûch êrst erkande
when I you first knew

und gesach in diseme lande.
and saw in this land.

des mûz ich sêre engelden.
of-that must I sorely pay.

ichn wil ûch niht schelden,
I will you not revile,

wande ir sît es âne scholt,
for you are of-it without fault,

ir wâret mir genûch holt,
you were to-me enough devoted,

ich minnete ûch zunmâzen.
I loved you beyond-measure.

nû habet ir mich verlâzen
now have you me left

vil unfrô in mîme hûs.
very unglad in my house.

ûwer mûder Vênûs
your mother Venus

und ûwer brûder Cupidô
and your brother Cupid

die macheten mich vil unfrô,
they made me very unglad,

die mir daz herze habent genomen,
who from-me the heart have taken,

daz mir mogen niht gefromen
that to-me may not avail

alle mîne sinne.
all my senses.

ouwê, unsenfte minne,
alas, ungentle love,

wie dû mich hâst bedwungen!
how thou me hast constrained!

ichn mach mit mîner zungen
I may with my tongue

niht gesagen mînen mût.
not tell my spirit.

ouwî êre unde gût,
alas honor and goods,

wunne unde wîstûm,
bliss and wisdom,

gewalt unde rîchtûm,
might and riches,

des hete ich alles mîn teil.
of-that had I all my part.

daz is ein michel unheil,
that is a great misfortune,

daz ich ez sus mûz enden
that I it thus must end

ze mînen missewenden
to my misfortunes

und alsus grôzem mînem schaden.
and thus great my harm.

ich bin zunsanfte uberladen
I am too-ungently overladen

mîn ungemach is sô gram,
my discomfort is so hostile,

ichn mach gegên noch gestân
I may walk nor stand

geligen noch gesitzen.
lie nor sit.

ich sterbe vor hitzen
I die for heat

und quele iedoch vor kalde.
and suffer yet for cold.

ichn weiz waz des gewalde,
I-not know what of-it prevails,

mir is vreislîche vergeben,
to-me is fearsomely poisoned,

sus enwil ich niht langer leben.‘
thus will I not longer live.‘

Aber sprach dô barmechlîche
Again spoke then pitifully

Dîdô diu rîche
Dido the rich

‚wie ubele mîn dink vert!
‚how badly my thing fares!

ouwê, daz mir daz wart beschert,
alas, that to-me that was allotted,

daz ich sus swelze enbinnen.
that I thus should-melt within.

ouwê dirre minnen,
alas for-this love,

sie is ungehûre,
it is monstrous,

diu mich mit ir fûre
which me with its fire

brennet alsô sêre.
burns so sorely.

man mach iemer mêre
one may ever more

wunder von mir sprechen.
wonder of me speak.

ich mûz dorchstechen
I must stab-through

daz herze, daz mich verriet.
the heart, which me betrayed.

war umbe ensterbete ich mich niet,
where fore killed I myself not,

do ich zem êrsten quelen began
when I at-the first to-suffer began

unde ich den fremden man
and I the strange man

alsô tumblîche nam,
so foolishly took,

der dorch mich niht here quam?
who for me not hither came?

het ich mich ê selbe erslagen,
had I me before self slain,

sone dorfte ich mich niht klagen
so needed I me not lament

noch mîner frunde dehein,
nor of-my friends any,

sô wâre geteilet enzwei
so were divided in-two

mîn schade und mîn schande:
my harm and my disgrace:

nû is after lande
now is throughout land

mîn laster vile mâre,
my reproach very famous,

und mûz ouch offenbâre
and must also openly

mîn schade vile grôz wesen,
my harm very great be,

wand ich ne wil niht genesen:‘
for I — will not recover:‘

Dô si daz allez gesprach,
When she that all spoke,

mit dem swerde sie sich stach
with the sword she herself stabbed

in daz herze dorch den lîb.
into the heart through the body.

al wâre sie ein wîse wîb,
though were she a wise woman,

sie was dô vil sinne lôs.
she was then very of-wits bereft.

daz si den tôt alsô kôs,
that she the death so chose,

daz quam von unsinne.
that came from madness.

ez was unrehtiu minne,
it was wrong love,

diu sie dar zû dwanc,
which her there to constrained,

mit dem stiche sie spranc
with the stab she sprang

unde viel in die glût.
and fell into the glow.

dô dorrete daz blût,
then dried the blood,

daz ir ûz der wunden flôz,
which to-her out-of the wound flowed,

wande daz fûr was grôz.
for the fire was great.

deste schierre was verbrant
the sooner was burned

ir gebende und ir gewant.
her headdress and her clothing.

ir fleisch mûste smelzen
her flesh must melt

unde ir herze swelzen.
and her heart melt-away.

dô si vil nâch tôt was,
when she very nearly dead was,

dô sprach si ‚hêre Ênêas,
then spoke she ‚lord Aeneas,

ir wordet mir zunheile geboren,
you were to-me to-misfortune born,

wande ich dorch ûh hân verloren
for I through you have lost

sus jâmerlîche mîn leben.
thus wretchedly my life.

die scholde wil ich û vergeben,
the guilt will I to-you forgive,

ichn mach û niht wesen gram.‘
I may to-you not be hostile.‘

dô diu swester wider quam,
when the sister back came,

diu des alles niht dahte,
who of-it all naught thought,

unde daz wîb brahte,
and the woman brought,

dâ si sie nâch hete gesant,
whom she her after had sent,

vaste sie beslozzen vant
fast she locked found

der kemenâten tore.
the chamber's door.

ein wîle klophete sie dâ vore
a while knocked she there before

unde rûrde den rink.
and touched the ring.

dô misseviel ir daz dink.
then displeased her the thing.

zeinem loche sie in sach
at-a hole she in saw

wâ Dîdô tôt lach
where Dido dead lay

verbrunnen in der glût.
burned in the glow.

des wart betrûbet ir mût.
of-that became troubled her spirit.

‚Ouwê' sprach si, ‚Dîdô,
‚Alas' spoke she, ‚Dido,

nû bin ich vil unfrô,
now am I very unglad,

frouwe swester, edele wîb,
lady sister, noble woman,

war umbe habet ir ûwern lîb
where fore have you your body

sus wunderlîche verloren?
so wondrously lost?

ouwê, daz ich ie wart geboren.
alas, that I ever was born.

daz ich von û sô verre quam
that I from you so far came

und ûr sô bôse ware nam,
and of-you so bad watch took,

daz mach ich iemer wole klagen,
that may I ever well lament,

wand ir ûch selbe habet erslagen
for you you self have slain

dorch eines mannes minne.
for a man's love.

daz quam von unsinne.
that came from madness.

ir mindet in zunmâzen:
you loved him beyond-measure:

dorch daz habt ir verlâzen
for that have you left

ûwern lîb und grôze êre.
your body and great honor.

daz mach ich wol klagen sêre.'
that may I well lament sorely.'

Annâ scrîte unde rief,
Anna shrieked and cried,

tobelîche sie lief
madly she ran

nâch dem kamerâre.
after the chamberlain.

dô man daz mâre
when one the tidings

in der borch wol vernam,
in the castle well heard,

vile lûte dare quam,
very-many people thither came,

die si wolden schouwen.
who her would behold.

ritter unde frouwen
knights and ladies

weinden vile sêre,
wept very sorely,

den si gût und êre
to-whom she goods and honor

dâ bevoren hete getân.
there before had done.

done liez man dar in gân
then let one there in go

nieman wan ir holden,
no-one but her liegemen,

die si leschen solden.
who her quench should.

ez was iedoch ze spâte.
it was yet too late.

dô worden sie ze râte,
then became they to counsel,

dô si zesamene quâmen,
when they together came,

daz si daz pulver nâmen
that they the dust took

von dem edelen wîbe,
of the noble woman,

von allem ir lîbe,
of all her body,

von fleische und von gebeine.
of flesh and of bone.

dô was si worden kleine,
then was she become small,

doch si dâ vor wâre grôz,
though she there before were great,

ê si der minne missenôz.
ere she of-the love ill-enjoyed.

daz pulver tâten si in ein vaz,
the dust put they in a vessel,

ein goldîn rôre was daz.
a golden tube was that.

dô nâmen si einen sark,
then took they a coffin,

der was wert maneger mark,
which was worth of-many-a mark,

die rôre legeten sie dar in.
the tube laid they there in.

dô het ir rât unde ir sin
then had her counsel and her sense

ubel ende genomen,
evil end taken,

dô si dar zû was komen.
when she there to was come.

ich sage û daz der sark was
I tell to-you that the coffin was

ein prasem grûne alse ein gras,
a prase green as a grass,

wole meisterlîche ergraben.
well masterfully engraved.

mit goldînen bûchstaben
with golden letters

was ir name dâ gescriben,
was her name there written,

wie si tôt was beliben.
how she dead had remained.

die bûchstaben sprâchen sô:
the letters spoke so:

‚hie liget frouwe Dîdô,
‚here lies lady Dido,

diu mâre und diu rîche,
the famous and the rich,

diu sich sô jâmerlîche
who herself so wretchedly

dorch minne zû tôde erslûch.‘
for love to death slew.‘

daz was wunderlîch genûch,
that was wondrous enough,

sô wîse sô si was.
as wise as she was.

do ne weste niht Ênêas
then — knew not Aeneas

nochn mohtes niht getrouwen,
nor might-of-it at-all trust,

daz si sich ir rouwen
that she herself her rue

sô ubile konde gemâzen,
so ill could measure,

daz sie sich solde lâzen
that she herself should let

die minne bedwingen
the love constrain

zû sô freislîchen dingen.
to so fearsome things.

Anchises's Summons

XII

Aeneas sails on, grieving, not knowing that the fiend counseled Dido's death, and lands where his father lies buried on the day of his anniversary, which he observes. That night Anchises, sent up from hell by the gods, bids him leave the old and weary there, take the valiant on to Italy, and first speak with him in hell, guided by the Sibyl, then vanishes before cockcrow. Aeneas is glad and dismayed. He tells his men all but the journey to hell and, on their counsel, founds a town by the sea for those he leaves.

Dô was der hêre dannen
Then was the lord thence

gevaren mit sînen mannen
fared with his men

verre ûf den hôhen sê.
far onto the high sea.

daz scheiden tetim vile wê.
the parting did-to-him very woe.

noch enwester des niet,
yet knew-he of-it not,

daz der vîant dâ geriet
that the fiend there counseled

der frouwen, daz si sich erslûch.
the lady, that she herself slew.

her was doch trûrech genûch
he was yet sorrowful enough

mit sînem ingesinde.
with his household.

dô fûr her vor dem winde
then fared he before the wind

ûf dem mere freissam,
on the sea fearsome,

unzer dâ ze lande quam,
until-he there to land came,

dâ sîn vater begraben lach,
where his father buried lay,

und quam rehte an den tach
and came right on the day

dô sîn jârgezît was.
when his anniversary was.

daz begienk ouch Ênêas
that observed also Aeneas

harde hêrlîchen dâ.
very lordly there.

an der nâhsten naht dar nâ
on the next night there after

erschein ime der vater sîn.
appeared to-him the father his.

‚Ênêas' sprach her ‚sun mîn,
‚Aeneas' spoke he ‚son mine,

vernim, waz ich dir sagen wil,
hear, what I to-thee tell will,

und enmerkez niht zû einem spil.
and mark-it not for a game.

Sun, ez is dir gût vernomen,
Son, it is to-thee good heard,

dorch daz ich her ûf bin komen
for that I hither up am come

ûz der helle ûf daz lant.
out-of the hell onto the land.

die gote habent mich gesant,
the gods have me sent,

der niderste und der hôste.
the lowest and the highest.

ich quam dir her ze trôste
I came to-thee hither for comfort

und sal dir gesagen al
and shall to-thee tell all

swaz sô dir geschehen sal,
whatever so to-thee happen shall,

wie dû dîn dink salt ane vân
how thou thy thing shalt at begin

und wie ez dir sal ergân.
and how it to-thee shall go.

Des saltû danken den goten,
For-that shalt-thou thank the gods,

die dirz bî mir hânt enboten,
who to-thee-it by me have sent-word,

daz si dîn niht vergâzen.
that they of-thee not forgot.

dû salt hie lâzen
thou shalt here leave

ein teil dîner lûte.
a part of-thy people.

nû schaffe daz noch hûte.
now bring-about that yet today.

Ênêas, (sprach her) sun mîn,
Aeneas, (spoke he) son mine,

die dû weist daz si frome sîn
those-whom thou knowest that they valiant be

und die dir ze storme togen
and who to-thee for assault serve

und die dir gedienen mogen,
and who to-thee serve may,

die kanstû wole erkennen,
them canst-thou well know,

die fûre mit dir hinnen.
them take with thee hence.

die aber dar zû sint komen,
those but there to are come,

daz in daz alder hât benomen
that from-them the age has taken

beidiu sinne unde kraft,
both senses and strength,

die mache hie wonehaft
them make here dwelling

nâch dînen êren.
after thy honors.

dune salt niht hinnen kêren
thou shalt not hence turn

niwan nâch mînem râte
except after my counsel

(al dunkez dich ze spâte,
(though seems-it to-thee too late,

du uberwindest al dîn arbeit
thou overcomest all thy hardship

und gwinnest grôze rîcheit)
and winnest great riches)

zû Italjen in daz lant,
to Italy into the land,

dar dich die gote hânt gesant:
whither thee the gods have sent:

dâ wirdest dû vil rîche.
there becomest thou very rich.

dû mûst mich wârlîche
thou must me truly

in der helle gesprechen ê,
in the hell speak before,

ê du immer kumest uber sê:
ere thou ever comest over sea:

des salt dû sîn vil gewis.
of-that shalt thou be very certain.

als dir vore gesaget is,
as to-thee before told is,

alsô sal ez dir ergân.
so shall it to-thee go.

swaz dir enteile is getân,
whatever to-thee as-portion is done,

des enwirt dir niht benomen,
of-that becomes to-thee naught taken,

dû salt vil wol dare komen.
thou shalt very well thither come.

Ênêas, (sprach her) sun mîn,
Aeneas, (spoke he) son mine,

desn mach ander rât sîn,
of-that-not may other counsel be,

wandez wellent die gote.
for-it will the gods.

nû volge ir gebote
now follow their command

unde alles ir willen:
and all their will:

var zû Sibillen.
fare to the-Sibyl.

ze Îcônjen is ir hûs,
at Iconium is her house,

niht enzwîvele dûs,
not doubt thou-it,

dû salt si wole vinden,
thou shalt her well find,

sie sal sich dîn underwinden
she shall herself of-thee take-charge

und sal dich geleiten
and shall thee guide

unde wol bereiten
and well prepare

zallen disen dingen
for-all these things

und sal dich wider bringen
and shall thee back bring

lebendich unde wol gesunt.
living and well healthy.

aldâ getûn ich dir kunt
there make I to-thee known

unde lâze dich gesehen
and let thee see

allez, daz dir sal geschehen
all, that to-thee shall happen

dîr und dînen nâchkomen.
to-thee and to-thy descendants.

hâst dû die rede wol vernomen,
hast thou the speech well heard,

(sprach her) lieber sun mîn?
(spoke he) dear son mine?

ichn mach niht langer hie sîn,
I may not longer here be,

ez nâhet der hanencrât,
it nears the cockcrow,

hie wider nis nehein rât.
here against is no counsel.

daz ich dir gesaget hân, daz tû
what I to-thee told have, that do

und wis flîzich dar zû.
and be zealous there to.

Ênêas, (sprach her) lieber sun,
Aeneas, (spoke he) dear son,

diz mûstû sicherlîche tûn
this must-thou surely do

unde enwis des niht laz
and be of-it not slack

und engedenke niht an daz,
and think not on that,

daz ez dir angestlîchen stêt.
that it to-thee fearfully stands.

ich weiz daz ez dir wol irgêt
I know that it to-thee well goes

und sage dir die wârheit.
and tell thee the truth.

iedoch sô mûstû arbeit
yet so must-thou hardship

lîden unde ungemach.‘
suffer and discomfort.‘

dô her daz wort volle sprach,
when he the word fully spoke,

vile schiere her verswant
very quickly he vanished

von sînen ougen zehant,
from his eyes at-once,

daz hern weste war er bequam,
that he-not knew whither he went,

dô diu rede ende nam.
when the speech end took.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

vernam waz diu rede was,
heard what the speech was,

daz ez wesen mûste sô,
that it be must so,

her was trûrich unde frô.
he was sorrowful and glad.

diu rede dûhte in gût
the speech seemed to-him good

und getrôstem sînen mût:
and comforted-him his spirit:

dô her daz hete vernomen,
when he that had heard,

daz her wole solde komen,
that he well should come,

dar her varen wolde,
whither he fare would,

und dâ gewinnen solde
and there win should

rîchtûm unde gewalt,
riches and power,

des frowete sich der helt balt
of-that rejoiced himself the hero bold

und missetrôste sich des,
and despaired himself of-that,

daz in sîn vater Anchîses
that him his father Anchises

zû der helle varen hiez,
to the hell fare bade,

wander daz ungerne liez.
for-he that unwillingly left.

her ne hetez niht getân,
he — had-it not done,

iedoch sô mûste herz bestân.
yet so must he-it undertake.

Dô dem hêren diu vart
When to-the lord the journey

zû der helle geboten wart,
to the hell commanded was,

daz dûhte in vile freissam.
that seemed to-him very fearsome.

dô her des morgens ûf quam
when he in-the morning up came

under sîn heimlîche man,
among his intimate men,

mit in her sprâchen began.
with them he to-speak began.

dô saget der hêre Ênêas
then told the lord Aeneas

al daz ime enboten was
all that to-him announced was

sînen hergesellen,
to-his host-comrades,

wan die vart zer hellen
except the journey to-the hell

die versweich her unde hal,
that kept-silent he and concealed,

daz ander sagete her in al
the other told he them all

unde hetes ir rât
and had-of-it their counsel

umbe alsô getâne tât.
about so made deed.

geswâslîche unde stille
secretly and quietly

vernam her ir willen,
heard he their will,

waz si des râten wolden
what they of-it counsel would

ob si dâ lâzen solden
whether they there leave should

die lûte die im ne tohten,
the people who to-him not availed,

di gevehten niene mohten
who fight not-at-all might

und lîden grôz arbeit.
and suffer great hardship.

daz dûhte sie dô wîsheit,
that seemed to-them then wisdom,

daz her alsô tâte.
that he so should-do.

mit ir aller râte
with their all counsel

irkôs her eine stat dâ
chose he a place there

bî dem mere genûch nâ
by the sea enough near

und hiez si wole vesten
and bade it well fortify

und gab sie den gesten,
and gave it to-the strangers,

dier dâ solde lâzen.
whom-he there should leave.

sie was wol zemâzen
it was well in-measure

beidiu veste unde wît.
both firm and wide.

zû der selber zît
at the same time

gescûf der hêre sîne vart,
brought-about the lord his journey,

die ime ze angesten wart.
which to-him to fears became.

The Sibyl and the Branch

XIII

Aeneas finds the Sibyl reading in her house of prayer, a hideous old woman with gray tangled hair, mossy tufts hanging from her ears, and a black, cold mouth. She agrees to guide him to hell and back, but first he must win a branch like no other, which no weapon can cut and which he will find only if the gods grant it. He offers to the gods, is led to it, draws it out, and sees another just like it standing in its place. The Sibyl gives him an herb against the stench and a salve against the fire and bids him carry his sword bare in his hand to light the way.

Dô fûr der hêre Ênêas
Then fared the lord Aeneas

dâ frouwe Sibille was.
where lady Sibyl was.

dô her quam dâ her si vant,
when he came where he her found,

dô hete der wîgant
then had the warrior

angest dô her sie gesach
fear when he her saw

umb daz ich û sagen mach:
for what I to-you tell may:

si was vil freislîche getân.
she was very fearsomely made.

iedoch gienk her vor si stân,
yet went he before her stand,

her begonde si ane schouwen:
he began her at to-look:

sine was einer frouwen
she was to-a lady

niht gelîch noch einem wîbe.
not like nor to-a woman.

hern hete in allem sîme lîbe
he had in all his life

nie niht solhes gesehen,
never aught such seen,

des wil ich an die lûte jehen,
of-that will I on the people declare,

die daz bûch hânt gelesen.
who the book have read.

sie ne mohte niht wesen
she — might not be

egeslîcher dan si was.
more-dreadful than she was.

diu frouwe saz antvas
the lady sat barefoot

in einem betehûs,
in a house-of-prayer,

als uns saget Virgiliûs
as us tells Virgil

von ir al vor wâr.
of her all for true.

grôz und grâ was ir daz hâr
great and gray was to-her the hair

und harde verworren,
and very tangled,

daz wir wol sprechen torren,
that we well say dare,

als eines pharîdes mane.
as a horse's mane.

und diu frouwe hete ane
and the lady had on

vil unfrouwelîch gewant.
very unladylike clothing.

ein bûch hete si an ir hant,
a book had she in her hand,

dar ane saz si unde las.
there on sat she and read.

dô gesach si Ênêas.
then saw her Aeneas.

Her markte sie rehte.
He marked her rightly.

mies lokkehte
mossy tufted

hieng ir ûz den ôren.
hung to-her out-of the ears.

sine mohte niht gehôren,
she might not hear,

ezn wâre ob man ir riefe.
unless-it were if one to-her called.

ir ougen stunden tiefe
her eyes stood deep

under den ouchbrâwen
under the eyebrows

langen unde grâwen,
long and gray,

die dâr vore hiengen
which there before hung

und ir zû der nasen giengen.
and to-her to the nose went.

grûwelîch was ir lîb.
gruesome was her body.

ime enwart nie dehein wîb
to-him became never any woman

alsô wunderlîche kunt.
so wondrously known.

swarz und kalt was ir der munt.
black and cold was to-her the mouth.

si saz in der gebâre,
she sat in the bearing,

alse ir leben wâre
as-if her life were

ân aller slahte wunne.
without all kind of-bliss.

die zene stunden ir dunne
the teeth stood to-her thin

und wâren ir lank unde gele,
and were to-her long and yellow,

ir was der hals und diu kele
to-her was the neck and the throat

swarz unde gerumphen.
black and wrinkled.

si selbe was gescrumphen
she self was shrunken

in bôseme gewande.
in wretched clothing.

ir arme unde ir hande
her arms and her hands

wâren âdern unde vel.
were veins and skin.

dô sie der helt snel
when her the hero swift

vile rehte besach,
very rightly looked-at,

dô bôt her ir gûten tach.
then offered he to-her good day.

Dô sin sprechen hôrde,
When she-him speak heard,

diu frouwe ime antworde
the lady to-him answered

vile minnechlîchen wider
very lovingly back

und hiez in bî ir sitzen nider.
and bade him by her sit down.

Ênêas der tete daz.
Aeneas he did that.

dô her bî ir gesaz,
when he by her sat,

dô sagete her ir rehte
then told he to-her rightly

sînen namen und sîn geslehte
his name and his lineage

und war her varen solde
and whither he fare should

und dorch welhe scholde
and for which cause

her zû zir dare quam.
he to her thither came.

dô si rehte vernam
when she rightly heard

sîne nôt und sînen willen,
his distress and his will,

dô antworde ime Sibille.
then answered to-him Sibyl.

Sie sprach ,edel jungelink,
She spoke ,noble youngling,

diz is ein angestlîch dink
this is a fearful thing

daz dû hâst bestanden.
that thou hast undertaken.

die dich dâ her sanden,
those-who thee there hither sent,

unser meister die gote,
our masters the gods,

bistû rehte ir bote
art-thou rightly their messenger

und wellent siz gebieten,
and will they-it command,

dune darft mich niht mieten,
thou needest me not hire,

ich wil mit dir dâ hin varen
I will with thee there thither fare

unde wil dich wol bewaren
and will thee well guard

unde wider bringen
and back bring

mit gnâdechlîchen dingen
with gracious things

lebende unde wol gesunt.
living and well healthy.

mir is der wech wole kunt,
to-me is the way well known,

ich bin ouch wîlen dar komen:
I am also formerly thither come:

swaz sô ich dir mach gefromen,
whatever so I to-thee may avail,

des bin ich dir gereite.
of-that am I to-thee ready.

ich tûn dir gût geleite.‘
I do to-thee good escort.‘

Ênêas sweich dô stille.
Aeneas kept-silent then still.

dô sprach aber Sibille
then spoke again Sibyl

‚nû ez alsô is getân,
‚now it so is done,

daz dû die vart salt bestân
that thou the journey shalt undertake

unde duz dorch nôt tûst,
and thou-it through need dost,

ich sage dir waz dû haben mûst,
I tell thee what thou have must,

des dû enberen niht ne maht.
of-which thou do-without not — mayst.

dar umbe wis ernistaht,
there about be earnest,

des is dir nôt daȥde alsô sîs.
of-that is to-thee need that-thou so be.

dar zû hôret ein rîs:
there to belongs a branch:

mahtû daȥ gewinnen,
mayst-thou that win,

sô vare ich sament dir hinnen
so fare I together-with thee hence

zû der helle hin nider
to the hell thither down

und bringe dich aber her wider.
and bring thee again hither back.

Daȥ rîs is aber sô getân,
The branch is but so made,

daȥ saltû wiȥȥen âne wân,
that shalt-thou know without doubt,

eȥn mûȥ dich nieman wîsen,
it must thee no-one guide,

ez nis niht andern rîsen
it is not to-other branches

an ir getât gelîche,
in their make alike,

ir nis en ertrîche
of-them is-not on earth

niewan daȥ eine.
except the one.

ez is ze mâȥe kleine
it is in measure small

unde is aber sô vast,
and is but so firm,

daz es nieman einen ast
that of-it no-one a bough

abe mach gewinnen;
off may win;

ezne mohte enginnen
it might cut

der wâfene dehein,
of-the weapons none,

der diu sunne ie beschein,
which the sun ever shone-on,

swie veste sô ez sî.
however firm so it be.

ich sage dir aber dâ bî,
I tell thee but there by,

is ez dir enteil getân,
(if)-is it to-thee as-portion done,

daz ez dir wol sal ergân,
that it to-thee well shall go,

des dû hâst begunnen,
what thou hast begun,

und es die gote gunnen,
and it the gods grant,

sô saltuz wole vinden:
so shalt-thou-it well find:

die soln dich senden
they shall thee send

an die stat dâ ez is,
to the place where it is,

des saltû sîn vil gewis,
of-that shalt-thou be very certain,

dâ sal ez dir wol werden:
there shall it to-thee well become:

dû salt ez ûz der erden
thou shalt it out-of the earth

geziehen vile lîhte,
draw very lightly,

sô sal enalgerihte
so shall straightway

rehte ein alsô getân
right one so made

an der selben stat stân.‘
in the same place stand.‘

Dô daz alsô geredet was,
When that so spoken was,

dô solde der hêre Ênêas,
then should the lord Aeneas,

der mâre und der wîse,
the famous and the wise,

varen nâch dem rîse
fare after the branch

alsez ime was geboten.
as-it to-him was commanded.

ein opher machete her den goten
an offering made he to-the gods

zêren und ze holden,
to-honor and to favor,

daz siz im wîsen solden.
that they-it to-him show should.

innechlîchen her sis bat.
inwardly he them-of-it asked.

dô sanden sie in an die stat
then sent they him to the place

rehte dâ her ez vant.
right where he it found.

dô zôch herz ûz mit der hant.
then drew he-it out with the hand.

dô her daz hete getân,
when he that had done,

ein anderz sach her dâ stân,
an other saw he there stand,

daz dem al gelîch was.
which to-it all alike was.

dô kêrde der hêre Ênêas
then turned the lord Aeneas

wider zû Sibillen.
back to the-Sibyl.

dô hete er sînes willen
then had he of-his will

dâ erworben ein teil.
there won a part.

dô liezen sie ez an ein heil.
then let they it on a fortune.

Dô der helt lussam
When the hero lovely

zû Sibillen wider quam
to the-Sibyl back came

und er daz rîs brahte,
and he the branch brought,

vil wole sie gedahte,
very well she thought,

waz her haben solde,
what he have should,

wand sin leiten wolde
for she-him lead would

als einen ir lieben trût.
as one her dear beloved.

dô gab si ime ein krût
then gave she to-him a herb

und gebôt im daz herz âze
and commanded to-him that he-it should-eat

unde es niht vergâze,
and it not should-forget,

her fûre verre deste baz.
he should-fare far the better.

Sibille ez ouch az,
Sibyl it also ate,

alsô tete Ênêas.
so did Aeneas.

si sagetim daz ez gût was
she told-him that it good was

wider den helleschen stank.
against the hellish stench.

des sageter ir gnâd unde dank,
for-that said-he to-her grace and thanks,

daz si in sô wol beriet,
that she him so well provided,

daz ime enmohte geschaden niet
that to-him might harm not

der ubil stank noch der rouch.
the evil stench nor the smoke.

einer salben gab sim ouch,
a salve gave she-to-him also,

gût unde tûre
good and costly

wider dem hellefûre,
against the hell-fire,

daz in niht dâ ne snite,
that him not there — should-cut,

der sich bestriche dâ mite.
who himself should-anoint there with.

Dô daz getân wart
When that done was

und si beidiu zû der vart
and they both for the journey

gereit wâren unde gare,
ready were and prepared,

daz swert daz hiez sie in bare
the sword that bade she him bare

nemen under sîn gewant,
take under his clothing,

daz herz trûge an sîner hant.
that he-it should-bear in his hand.

si weste wole umbe waz.
she knew well about what.

diu frouwe hiez ez umbe daz,
the lady bade it for that,

daz herz mit im nâme,
that he-it with him should-take,

so er in die helle quâme
when he into the hell should-come

in die vinsternisse,
into the darkness,

daz her ime gewisse
that he to-himself surely

dâ mite lûhten solde.
there with light should.

her tet als si wolde,
he did as she would,

daz her des niht ne liez,
that he of-it naught — left,

daz in diu frouwe tûn hiez.
what him the lady do bade.

The Descent, and Charon

XIV

At nightfall they descend into a reeking pit where a burning river falls, and the Sibyl explains that every soul must enter here and that Pluto and Proserpine rule. They see naked souls freezing and torn by dragons, lions, and leopards, some of whom lost their lives through their own fault and wait to be ferried over. At the river Phlegethon they meet Charon, a shaggy devil with a leopard's head and burning eyes, who beats the souls with his pole. He refuses to ferry a living man, recalls Orpheus, and threatens Aeneas.

Alsô ez dô naht wart,
As it then night became,

dô hûben sie sich an die vart.
then raised they themselves on the journey.

den goten si sich bevâlen.
to-the gods they themselves commended.

die vart sie dô hâlen
the journey they then hid

ir nâchgebûren. 2885
from-their neighbors.

dô si ein wîle gefûren
when they a while fared

sînt si sich ûz gehûben,
since they themselves out raised,

si quâmen zeiner grûben,
they came to-a pit,

diu was wît unde lank.
which was wide and long.

freislîche sie stank, 2890
fearsomely it stank,

sie was vinster unde tief.
it was dark and deep.

ein brinnende wazzer drin lief,
a burning water therein ran,

ez viel tiefe in den grunt.
it fell deep into the ground.

daz was Sibillen wole kunt,
that was to-the-Sibyl well known,

ez vorhte aber Ênêas,
there feared but Aeneas,

wandez ime unkunt was.
for-it to-him unknown was.

daz ne was dehein wunder.
that — was no wonder.

her hôrde daz wazzer drunder,
he heard the water there-under,

daz bran unde krachete,
that burned and crackled,

grôz wunder ez machete
great wonder it made

unde starke nider flôz.
and strongly down flowed.

der rouch was dâ alsô grôz,
the smoke was there so great,

daz her dâ ne mohte niht gesehen.
that he there — might not see.

al ne torste hers niht jehen,
though — dared he-it not declare,

iedoch vorhte im sêre
yet feared for-himself sorely

Ênêas der hêre.
Aeneas the lord.

Dô marcte Sibille
Then marked Sibyl

vil wole sînen willen,
very well his will,

daz̨ her im sêre forhte.
that he to-himself sorely feared.

sie sprach, her ne dorhte
she spoke, he — needed

nehein angest haben dâ.
no fear have there.

‚ez̨ is hie vile nâ
‚it is here very near

an dem êrsten învare.
at the first entrance.

ich wil dir vile gare
I will to-thee very fully

sagen, wie ez̨ hie stêt
tell, how it here stands

umbe daz̨ loch, daz̨ hier in gêt:
about the hole, which here in goes:

ez̨ is der helle învart.
it is the hell's entrance.

al daz̨ ie geboren wart
all that ever born was

von manne und von wîbe,
of man and of woman,

sô si von diseme lîbe
when they from this body

zêrist gescheiden werden
at-first parted become

hie obene an der erden,
here above on the earth,

arme unde rîche,
poor and rich,

si mûz̨en algelîche
they must all-alike

ze diseme loche în varen;
into this hole in fare;

ez ne mach nieman bewaren,
it — may no-one avoid,

ez stêt von anegenge sô.
it stands from beginning so.

des gerihtes phliget Plûtô,
of-the judgment takes-care Pluto,

sîn is hie diu meisterschaft,
his is here the mastery,

her behaldet hie die hêrschaft
he holds here the lordship

und diu frouwe Proserpîne,
and the lady Proserpine,

diu alde winje sîne.'
the old wife his.'

Dô Sibille daz gesprach,
When Sibyl that spoke,

dô gienk ez an daz ungemach.
then went it to the discomfort.

sine wolde niht langer wesen dâ.
she would not longer be there.

der hêre volgete ir nâ
the lord followed her after

al dâ si hine fûr.
all where she thither fared.

diu vart wart ime vile sûr,
the journey became to-him very bitter,

wande sie was freissam.
for it was fearsome.

hern weste wier dar nider quam.
he-not knew how-he there down came.

dô si wâren in dem tal,
when they were in the valley,

do gesâgen si lûte âne zal,
then saw they people without number,

die weinden unde liefen,
who wept and ran,

si scriwen unde riefen,
they shrieked and cried,

beidiu man unde wîb.
both man and woman.

naket was aller ir lîb.
naked was all their body.

si liefen vor unde wider
they ran forth and back

daz wazzer ûf unde nider,
the water up and down,

daz dâ brinnende flôz.
which there burning flowed.

ir ungemach was vile grôz
their discomfort was very great

in dem vinstern walde.
in the dark forest.

si liden michil kalde
they suffered great cold

von îse und von snêwe.
from ice and from snow.

die trachen und die lêwen
the dragons and the lions

und die lintworme
and the serpents

die sûchten sie ze storme
they sought them for assault

und die lêbarde
and the leopards

mûten sie vil harde,
troubled them very greatly,

die si sêre bizzen.
who them sorely bit.

daz fleisch si in zerizzen
the flesh they from-them tore

und von dem beine nûgen.
and from the bone gnawed.

si macheten in genûgen
they made to-them enough

blûtende wunden.
bleeding wounds.

si mûsten zallen stunden
they must at-all hours

mit solher nôt werben,
with such distress strive,

sine mohten niht ersterben
they might not die

dorch deheiner slahte nôt,
through any kind-of distress,

wande si wâren zer werlde tôt.
for they were to-the world dead.

ir quâle was unendehaht.
their torment was endless.

si heten zallen zîten naht,
they had at-all times night,

sine gewunnen nimmer tach.
they won never day.

dô daz Ênêas gesach
when that Aeneas saw

die jâmerlîche wîze dâ,
the wretched torment there,

dô frâgete her sâ
then asked he at-once

Sibillen von den lûten,
the-Sibyl about the people,

waz daz mohte dûten.
what that might mean.

Sibille diu alde
Sibyl the old

si sagete ime balde,
she told to-him quickly,

daz daz sêle wâren,
that that souls were,

die vor manegen jâren
who before many years

sumelîche wâren dar komen,
some were thither come,

den daz leben was benomen
from-whom the life was taken

von ir selber scholden
by their own fault

und dâ dolen solden
and there endure should

nôt unde arbeit,
distress and hardship,

unz es den meister dûhte zît,
until it the master seemed time,

daz man si fûrde uber den flût.
that one them should-take over the flood.

dô wart dem hêren sîn mût
then became to-the lord his spirit

beswâret von den armen,
weighed-down by the poor-ones,

die begonden in erbarmen.
who began him to-pity.

Dô her vernomen hete daz
When he heard had that

dô quâmen si vore baz
then came they forward further

Sibille unde ir vartgenôz,
Sibyl and her journey-fellow,

aldâ si wunder vile grôz
where they wonders very great
gesâgen und vernâmen.
saw and heard.
do si an daz wazzer quâmen,
when they to the water came,
daz dâ heizet Flêgetôn,
which there is-called Phlegethon,
do gesach der Anchîses son
then saw the Anchises' son
daz im seltsâne was.
what to-him strange was.
der mâre helt Ênêas
the famous hero Aeneas
gesach ein schif dar uber gân,
saw a ship there over go,
swarz und ubile getân,
black and ill made,
zebrochen unde vile alt.
broken and very old.
dar inne gesach der helt balt
there in saw the hero bold
einen egeslîchen vere,
a dreadful ferryman,
der daz jâmerlîche here
who the wretched host
uber daz wazzer fûrde.
over the water ferried.
starke her sich rûrde
strongly he himself stirred
beidiu naht unde tach,
both night and day,

daz hern saz noch enlach
that he sat nor lay

und nimmer rûwe gewan.
and never rest won.

ez was ein tûvel, niht ein man,
it was a devil, not a man,

und was geheizen Châr̂o.
and was called Charon.

dâ was maneger unfrô,
there was many-a-one unglad,

des her lutzil ware nam.
of-which he little heed took.

als er zû dem stade quam,
as he to the shore came,

sô was dâ michel gedrank.
so was there great throng.

der schaltboum der was lank,
the punting-pole it was long,

den her an sîner hande trûch.
which he in his hand bore.

die sêle her dâ mite slûch,
the souls he there with struck,

her gab in manegen sêren stôz,
he gave them many-a sore thrust,

want der schaltboum was grôz,
for the punting-pole was great,

glûjende stahelîn.
glowing of-steel.

dâ mit stûrder daz schif sîn.
there with steered-he the ship his.

swarz wârn im die hande.
black were to-him the hands.

vil wole er die erkande,
very well he them knew,

die her dâ lâzen solde;
whom he there leave should;

dier aber uber fûren wolde,
whom-he but over ferry would,

die nam her balde dar an,
them took he quickly there on,

die andern stiez her hin dan,
the others thrust he thither away,

her gab in manegen sêren slach.
he gave them many-a sore stroke.

dô daz Ênêas gesach,
when that Aeneas saw,

dô frâgete der Trojâre
then asked the Trojan

Sibillen, waz daz wâre.
the-Sibyl, what that were.

Si sprach ‚ich sage dir rehte
She spoke ‚I tell thee rightly

von dem gûten knehte,
of the good servant,

der daz schif stûret.
who the ship steers.

die her dâ uber fûret
those-whom he there over ferries

und in daz schif lâzet gân,
and into the ship lets go,

die habent die bûze getân,
they have the penance done,

diu in hie gesetzet was,
which to-them here set was,

daz merke frunt Ênêas.
that mark friend Aeneas.

die ander dier dâ wider slât
the others whom-he there back strikes

und in daz schif niht enphât
and into the ship not receives

unde freissam ane siht,
and fearsomely at looks,

sine habent sô vil getân niht
they have so much done not

daz si noch uber mûzen,
that they yet over must,

ê sie noch baz gebûzen.‘
ere they yet better should-atone.‘

Dô beschouwete Ênêas
Then beheld Aeneas

wie getân der verje was,
how made the ferryman was,

her markte in rehte.
he marked him rightly.

rûch lockehte
rough shaggy

was im aller sîn lîb.
was to-him all his body.

her hazete man unde wîb,
he hated man and woman,

alser si alle wolde erslân.
as-if-he them all would slay.

sîn houbet was ime getân
his head was to-him made

als eime lêbarde.
as to-a leopard.

sîn ougen brunnen harde
his eyes burned hard

gelîch einem fûre.
like a fire.

her was ungehûre
he was monstrous

hinden unde vorne.
behind and before.

scharf alse dorne
sharp as thorns

wâren sîn oucbrâwen
were his eyebrows

unde scharf sîn clâwen
and sharp his claws

an fûzen unde an handen.
on feet and on hands.

alle die in erkanden
all who him knew

die vorhten in dorch nôt.
they feared him through need.

die zene wâren ime alrôt
the teeth were to-him all-red

unde lank unde grôz.
and long and great.

her was ein grûlîch vartgenôz.
he was a gruesome journey-fellow.

sûr was ime der munt,
sour was to-him the mouth,

her het ein zagel als ein hunt.
he had a tail like a hound.

egislîch was sîn gebâre.
dreadful was his bearing.

Ênêas der mâre
Aeneas the famous

vorhte in dô her in gesach,
feared him when he him saw,

des man wol getrouwen mach.
of-which one well believe may.

Dô sprach der Trojân
Then spoke the Trojan

‚soln wir an daz schif gân?'
‚shall we onto the ship go?'

»jâ wir« sprach Sibille,
»yea we« spoke Sibyl,

»swîch dû aber stille
»keep-silent thou but still

unde ensprich neheine wîs.
and speak in-no way.

gib mir daz rîs,
give me the branch,

daz ich dich wîse, daz tû?«
that I thee guide, that do?«

dô gienk si deme stade zû.
then went she the shore to.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

dar nâher komen was
there nearer come was

unde zû dem schiffe gienk,
and to the ship went,

ubillîche in enphienk
evilly him received

der ubile schalk Châr̂o.
the evil rogue Charon.

ze ime sprach her alsô
to him spoke he so

‚waz mannes is daz sô getân,
‚what of-man is that so made,

der in daz schif wil gân?
who into the ship will go?

ich wil ez gerne bewaren,
I will it gladly guard,

ichn lâẓe in niht her uber varen
I let him not hither over fare

in mînes meisters rîche.
into my master's realm.

hern quam mennislîche
hither came humanly

nie nieman dorch unser gût.
never anyone through our domain.

ich ne wil niht daz ir tût
I — will not that you do

als Phôcus, demz sô wol ergienk,
as Phocus, to-whom-it so well went,

dêr unsern portenâre vienk
who our porter seized

unde fûrde in hinnen.
and led him hence.

ich sal in baz erkennen
I shall him better know

den ich hie uber fûre.
whom I here over ferry.

diz schif wirt im tûre
this ship becomes to-him dear

die wîle ich ez mach bewaren.
the while I it may guard.

her was ouch wîlen gevaren
hither was also formerly fared

Orpheus der mâre,
Orpheus the famous,

der gûte harphâre,
the good harper,

her wolde hie holn sîn wîb,
he would here fetch his woman,

dar umbe hete er sînen lîb
there about had he his body

selbe vil nâch verlorn.
self very nearly lost.

mir is diu rede vil zorn.
to-me is the speech very wrath.

dune wellest dich versinnen
unless-thou will thyself bethink

und varest schiere hinnen,
and farest quickly hence,

dir wirt lîhte ein slach,
to-thee becomes easily a stroke,

daz dir der rukke brechen mach.‘
that to-thee the back break may.‘

Cerberus, and the Fields of Mourning

XV

Charon, silenced by the Sibyl and shown the branch, ferries them over. They see souls drinking from Oblivio, the river of forgetting. The Sibyl leads Aeneas on with his sword drawn to Cerberus, a three-headed hound grown over with adders, whom she lulls asleep with words. Past the gate they find children dead with their mothers, those who died for love, among them Dido, who turns away from him, and the heroes of Thebes and Troy. Then Aeneas sees an iron castle by the burning river.

Dô sprach Sibille
Then spoke Sibyl

‚Châr̂o, nû swîch stille,
‚Charon, now keep-silent still,

lâ dîn ubil rede stân,
let thy evil speech stand,

her mûz wol in daz schif gân:
he must well into the ship go:

ez is der hêre Ênêas.
it is the lord Aeneas.

ich sage dir wer sîn vater was:
I tell thee who his father was:

der alde Trojâr Anchîses,
the old Trojan Anchises,

ze deme her her komen is
to whom he hither come is

mit geleite und mit gebote
with escort and with command

unser obersten gote,
of-our highest gods,

unde die hie nidere
and those-who here below

sprechent dar niht widere.
speak there naught against.

fûre uns uber unde swîch!‘
take us over and keep-silent!‘

dô liez sin sehen daz zwîch,
then let she-him see the twig,

daz rehte warzeichen.
the right token.

dô begonder smeichen,
then began-he to-fawn,

dô her des zwîges wart gewar,
when he of-the twig became aware,

dô kêrde her daz schif dar,
then turned he the ship thither,

beidiu her si dran nam.
both he them thereon took.

dô Ênêas drin quam,
when Aeneas therein came,

dô was daz schif sô getân
then was the ship so made

als ez iezû solt undergân.
as-if it at-once should go-under.

des wart getrûbet sîn sin.
of-that became troubled his sense.

dâ was michel jâmer in,
there was great misery in,

von sêlen michel gedrank,
of souls great throng,

von dem beche grôzer stank.
of the pitch great stench.

der angest was dâ vile grôz.
the fear was there very great.

daz wazzer, daz dâ in flôz,
the water, which there in flowed,

daz wiel unde brande.
that boiled and burned.

doch quâmen sie ze lande
yet came they to land

mit sorgen vile starken
with cares very strong

und giengen ûz der barken.
and went out-of the bark.

Dô gesach aber Ênêas
Then saw again Aeneas

daz im seltsâne was,
what to-him strange was,

her gesach sêle mit den scharen,
he saw souls with the troops,

die dâ uber wâren gevaren,
who there over were fared,

dô sie daz lant geviengen,
when they the land gained,

daz si zeinem flûme giengen
that they to-a river went

unde trunken al dar zô.
and drank all there to.

Sibillen frâgete her dô,
the-Sibyl asked he then,

dorch welhiu dink si tâten daz,
for which things they did that.

si sprach ‚ich sage dir umbe waz:
she spoke ‚I tell thee for what:

ez heizet Oblîviô
it is-called Oblivio

und is geschaffen alsô,
and is made so,

sô si dâ getrinken,
when they there have-drunk,

sone kunnen sie gedenken
so can they remember

der dinge neheine,
of-the things none,

grôz noch kleine,
great nor small,

der in geschehen was dâ bevoren:
which to-them happened was there before:

die gedanke habent sie verloren.‘
the thoughts have they lost.‘

Sibille sprach aber dô
Sibyl spoke again then

dem hêren Ênêase zô
to-the lord Aeneas to

‚Ênêas, dû bist komen
‚Aeneas, thou art come

dâ dir wênich maeh gefromen
where to-thee little may avail

dîn mennislîcher list.
thy human skill.

diu stat dâ dû inne bist
the place where thou in art

is rehte der art,
is right of-the kind,

dune quâme nie in dirre vart
thou camest never on this journey

in sô grôze vinsternisse
into so great darkness

(sprach diu prophêtisse),
(spoke the prophetess),

dar dû nû schiere komen salt.
whither thou now quickly come shalt.

Ênêas helt balt,
Aeneas hero bold,

dâ nis deheiner slahte lieht.
there is of-no kind light.

doch missetrôste dich nieht,
yet despair thee not,

ich sal dich geleiten
I shall thee guide

und vil wol bereiten
and very well provide

alles des dîn herze gert.
of-all that thy heart desires.

zûch her vore dîn swert
draw hither forth thy sword

und merke, wie ich vore vare,
and mark, how I before fare,

unde trach dîn swert al bare
and carry thy sword all bare

unde lûhte dir dâ mite.
and light to-thee there with.

ich weiz wol allen den site
I know well all the custom

von diseme hellerîche.
of this hell-realm.

volge mir wîslîche,
follow me wisely,

wande des is dir nôt.‘
for of-it is to-thee need.‘

dô tete her als si ime gebôt.
then did he as she to-him commanded.

Dô si gesprochen hete daz,
When she spoken had that,

dô fûren sie vore baz
then fared they forward further

dâ si wunder vil vernâmen.
where they wonders many heard.

zû der porten sie quâmen
to the gate they came

dar nâch in korzen stunden.
there after in short hours.

Cerberum si funden
Cerberus they found

der helle portenâre.
the hell's porter.

Ênêas der mâre
Aeneas the famous

vorhte in dô her in gesach,
feared him when he him saw,

wander sô tobelîchen lach.
for-he so madly lay.

hern wolde im niht nâher gân.
he would to-him not nearer go.

dô was her sô freislîche getân,
then was he so fearsomely made,

daz ir ez niht geloubet.
that you it not believe.

her hete driu houbet
he had three heads

grôz und egislîche.
great and dreadful.

her sach sô freislîche,
he looked so fearsomely,

im was diu porte bevolen.
to-him was the gate commended.

sîn ougen glûten sam die kolen,
his eyes glowed like the coals,

daz fûre im ûz dem munde flouch
the fire to-him out-of the mouth flew

und ubil stinkende rouch
and evil stinking smoke

ûz der nasen und ûz den ôren,
out-of the nose and out-of the ears,

als ir wole moget hôren.
as you well may hear.

wie stark und wie heiz her was?
how strong and how hot he was?

daz Sibille und Ênêas
that Sibyl and Aeneas

sich von der hitze brûten.
themselves from the heat scalded.

die zene ime glûten
the teeth to-him glowed

als daz îsen in dem fûre:
as the iron in the fire:

her was vil ungehûre
he was very monstrous

des tûveles galle;
the devil's gall;

her was rûch betalle,
he was rough wholly,

her ne was doch sô rûch niht,
he — was yet so rough not,

als ander tier diu man gesiht,
as other beasts which one sees,

niwan als ich û sagen sal.
except as I to-you tell shall.

sîn lîb was im bewassen al
his body was to-him overgrown all

mit nateren und mit slangen,
with adders and with snakes,

mit korzen und mit langen,
with short and with long,

mit grôzen und mit kleinen,
with great and with small,

an armen unde an beinen,
on arms and on legs,

an handen unde an fûzen.
on hands and on feet.

nû wir ez sagen mûzen,
now we it say must,

wande wirz an den bûchen lesen,
for we-it in the books read,

daz die nagele solden wesen,
what the nails should be,

daz wâren clâwen vile scharf.
that were claws very sharp.

den schûm her ûz dem munde warf
the foam he out-of the mouth cast

heiz und bitter unde sûr.
hot and bitter and sour.

her is ein ubil nâchgebûr.
he is an evil neighbor.

Der helle torwarde
The hell's gatekeeper

der zornde vile harde,
he raged very greatly,

dô her die menschen gesach.
when he the humans saw.

niht langer her ne lach,
not longer he — lay,

zornlîche her ûf sprank.
wrathfully he up sprang.

sîn âdem freislîche stank,
his breath fearsomely stank,

wîte ginete im der munt.
wide gaped to-him the mouth.

her was gestalt alsam ein hunt
he was shaped like a hound

hinden unde vorne.
behind and before.

her strûbete sich vor zorne.
he bristled himself for wrath.

die nateren und die slangen,
the adders and the snakes,

da her mite was bevangen,
where he with was encompassed,

si bliesen unde gullen,
they blew and yelled,

freislîche si bullen,
fearsomely they bellowed,

sô daz diu helle erwagete,
so that the hell shook,

und als der tûvel jagete,
and as-if the devil hunted,

grôzlîch daz gescrei was.
mightily the cry was.

dô ervorhte sich Ênêas
then took-fright himself Aeneas

unde rou in diu vart.
and rued him the journey.

schiere des geware wart
quickly of-it aware became

Sibille diu wîse.
Sibyl the wise.

sie sprach vile lîse
she spoke very softly

solhiu wort in ir munt,
such words in her mouth,

daz her sâ zû der stunt
that he at-once at the hour

alsô vaste enslief,
so fast fell-asleep,

daz her ne grein noch enrief
that he — snarled nor cried

Cerberus der arge
Cerberus the wicked

und alle sîne warge,
and all his monsters,

die an ime hiengen.
which on him hung.

in die porte si giengen
into the gate they went

der hêre unde Sibille.
the lord and Sibyl.

Cerberus gelach stille
Cerberus lay still

gewunden alse ein schîbe.
wound as a disc.

dâ liezen si in belîben.
there let they him remain.

Dô daz alsô ergangen was,
When that so happened was,

daz Sibille und Ênêas
that Sibyl and Aeneas

in die porte quâmen,
into the gate came,

als wir ê vernâmen,
as we before heard,

zû den selben stunden
at the same hours

vile sie dâ vunden
many they there found

lûterlîcher kinde
of-pure children

vor der helle an einem ende,
before the hell at an end,

da di mûder wâren mite tôt.
where the mothers were with dead.

sie liden michel nôt,
they suffered great distress,

si scriren vile sêre.
they shrieked very sorely.

Ênêas der hêre
Aeneas the lord

micheln jâmer ir gewan,
great pity of-them won,

dô her merken began,
when he to-mark began,

wie jâmerlîche si sâgen
how wretchedly they looked

und wie freislîche si lâgen
and how fearsomely they lay

beidiu nacket unde blôz;
both naked and bare;

der jâmer dûhte in vile grôz.
the misery seemed to-him very great.

dô her daz wunder dô vernam
when he the wonder then heard

unde vore baz quam,
and forward further came,

Ênêas der wîgant
Aeneas the warrior

michel here her dô vant,
great host he then found,

die tôt wârn von minnen.
who dead were from love.

dâ mûste her erkennen
there must he know

froun Dîdônen die rîchen,
lady Dido the rich,

diu sich sô jâmerlîchen
who herself so wretchedly

dorch sînen willen hete erslagen.
for his sake had slain.

ir schaden wolder klagen,
her harm would-he lament,

trûrechlîche sach hers an.
sorrowfully looked he-her at.

mit dem houbet wankte si hin dan,
with the head turned she thither away,

sine wolden niht ane sehen;
she would-him not at look;

daz irz solde geschehen,
that to-her-it should happen,

daz rou si vile sêre
that rued her very sorely

und dûhte si unêre.
and seemed to-her dishonor.

Dô si vernomen heten daz,
When they heard had that,

dô fûren si vore baz,
then fared they forward further,

die vart liezens an ein heil.
the journey let-they on a fortune.

si funden der ein michel teil,
they found of-them a great part,

die tôt wârn dorch ritterschaft;
who dead were through knighthood;

vil grôz was der geselleschaft.
very great was of-the company.

dâ was der kunich Adrastus,
there was the king Adrastus,

Polinîces und Tydêus
Polynices and Tydeus

Ypomedôn und Partonopeus,
Hippomedon and Parthenopaeus,

Amphîorâs und Canepeus,
Amphiaraus and Capaneus,

die ze Thêbîs den lîb verloren
who at Thebes the life lost

und den tôt dâ erkoren.
and the death there chose.

ouch vander dar nâ
also found-he there after

der Troiâre vile dâ,
of-the Trojans many there,

die von sîme lande,
those from his land,

di er alle wole erkande.
whom he all well knew.

dâ was der kunich Prîamûs
there was the king Priam

und der kûne Trôilûs,
and the bold Troilus,

Pârîs unde Hectôr
Paris and Hector

und der wîse Anthênôr
and the wise Antenor

und der hovesche Athamas.
and the courtly Athamas.

harde vile der was,
very many of-them was,

der ich genennen niene mach.
whom I to-name not-at-all may.

dô si Ênêas gesach,
when them Aeneas saw,

dô schamete her sich sêre:
then shamed he himself sorely:

ez dûhtin unêre
it seemed-to-him dishonor

daz her von in gescheiden was,
that he from them parted was,

der herzoge Ênêas,
the duke Aeneas,

von frunden und von mâgen,
from friends and from kinsmen,

die dâ erslagen lâgen
who there slain lay

in Troie der wîten.
in Troy the wide.

zû den selben zîten
at the same times

quam Ênêas der wîgant,
came Aeneas the warrior,

dâ her der Criechen vile vant,
where he of-the Greeks many found,

die Troie zebrâchen
who Troy broke

unde ir laster râchen.
and their reproach avenged.

vil erkandir Ênêas.
many knew-of-them Aeneas.

ich wil û sagen wer dâ was.
I will to-you tell who there was.

Menelaus und Tytides,
Menelaus and Tydides,

Agamemnôn und Achilles,
Agamemnon and Achilles,

und der fromige Aiax
and the valiant Ajax

und der junge Protesilax.
and the young Protesilaus.

den erkande wol Ênêas,
him knew well Aeneas,

wande her der êrste was,
for he the first was,

der vor Troie erschlagen wart.
who before Troy slain was.

des gnôz her der herevart.
of-that enjoyed he the war-journey.

der Criechen her dâ vile vant.
of-the Greeks he there many found.

dô sach her zer winstern hant
then saw he at-the left hand

eine grôze borch stân,
a great castle stand,

diu was vil egislîche getân,
which was very dreadfully made,

sô si von rehte solde sîn.
as it by right should be.

diu mûre was îsenîn
the wall was of-iron

und glûte vone fûre;
and glowed from fire;

sie was ungehûre.
it was monstrous.

ein wazzer dar ûz flôz
a water there out flowed

brinnende vile grôz,
burning very great,

daz dâ Flêgetôn hiez.
which there Phlegethon was-called.

unreine was sîn fliez,
unclean was its flowing,

ez was der hellische flûm:
it was the hellish river:

harde wît was sîn rûm.
very wide was its room.

Tartarus

XVI

The Sibyl tells Aeneas that the iron castle is hell itself, in endless night, where Rhadamanthus torments the souls in a lightless fire, lamenting without hope of release. She herself was led through it by Tisiphone. She describes Tantalus up to his neck in water yet thirsting, the giants who would have stormed heaven, and Tityus, who desired Diana and lies on his back while vultures eat his heart, which at once grows back. Minos has written all these torments down.

Dô Ênêas dar nâher quam,
When Aeneas there nearer came,

micheln jâmer her vernam
great misery he heard

und grôz weinen in der stat.
and great weeping in the place.

froun Sibillen her dô bat,
lady Sibyl he then asked,

diu in dar geleite,
who him thither led,

daz sin des bereite
that she-him of-it should-inform

umbe die borch mâre,
about the castle famous,

waz volkes daz wâre,
what of-folk that were,

daz dâ klagete unde weinde,
which there lamented and wept,

unde waz daz jâmer meinde,
and what the misery meant,

daz her dâr inne hôrde.
which he there in heard.

diu frouwe im antworde,
the lady to-him answered,

oberz wizzen wolde,
if-he-it know would,

daz siz im sagen solde.
that she-it to-him tell should.

Dô sprach diu prophêtisse
Then spoke the prophetess

‚ich wil dir sagen gewisse,
‚I will to-thee tell surely,

Ênêas geselle,
Aeneas comrade,

daz is diu rehte helle,
that is the right hell,

alsô dû gesehen maht.
as thou see mayst.

dâ is immer inne naht,
there is ever within night,

dâ ne wart nie tach
there — became never day

noch niemer werden mach.
nor ever become may.

wie wol ich daz erkenne,
however well I that know,

dâ sint die sêle inne
there are the souls within

mit vil maneger arbeit,
with very many-a hardship,

daz dir die wârheit
that to-thee the truth

weder wîb noch man
neither woman nor man

gesagen mach noch enkan
tell may nor can

daz hundert tûsendeste teil.
the hundred thousandth part.

sie hânt michel unheil,
they have great misfortune,

die dar inne mûzen sîn.
who there in must be.

daz wirt in dicke wole schîn
that becomes to-them often well seen

immer ze allen stunden
ever at all hours

under den hellehunden.
among the hell-hounds.

der dâ wirt is ze hûs
who there host is at home

der heizet Râdamantûs.
he is-called Rhadamanthus.

den sêlen her vil wê tût;
to-the souls he much woe does;

gnâde und aller slahte gût
grace and of-all kind good

is in vile tûre,
is to-them very dear,

si brinnent in dem fûre
they burn in the fire

mit tage und mit nahte.
by day and by night.

ir quâle is maneger slahte,
their torment is of-many kind,

ir fûre is âne lieht
their fire is without light
unde nis gelîch nieht
and is like not
irdischeme fûre;
to-earthly fire;
ez is ungehûre
it is monstrous
und brinnet grimmechlîche.
and burns grimly.
daz fûre in ertrîche
the fire on earth
is als wazzer dar wider.
is as water there against.
si vallent ze allen zîten nider
they fall at all times down
in daz abgrunde.
into the abyss.
si mûzen ir sunde
they must their sin
arnen vile sêre
pay-for very sorely
immer und immer mêre
ever and ever more
beidiu tach unde naht.
both day and night.
ir klage is unendehaht,
their lament is endless,
[sie ne habent deheinen trôst,
[*they — have no comfort,*
daz si iemer werden erlôst
that they ever become released
ûz der misselîcher nôt.
out-of the manifold distress.

dar inne lebet der Tôt,
there in lives the Death,

iemer âne ende.
ever without end.

quâle und missewende,
torment and misfortune,

vehten unde strîten
fighting and battling

is dâ zallen zîten
is there at-all times

unde koln und niht ersterben.
and suffer and not die.

alle die daz erwerben
all who that earn

oben ûf der erden,
above on the earth,

die dar geworfen werden,
who thither thrown become,

mit schanden mûzen sie sich schamen,
with disgrace must they themselves shame,

wande si habent beide ensamen
for they have both together

arbeit unde ungemach,
hardship and discomfort,

daz dâ nie ne gebrach
which there never — ceased

und nimmer ende geschiht.
and never end happens.

sone stêt ez umbe den menschen niht:
so stands it about the human not:

swenne sô ez sô stêt,
whenever so it so stands,

daz ime ein angest zû gêt
that to-him a fear to goes
und ubiln geheiz lîden mûz,
and evil threat suffer must,
der sorgen wirt ime bûz,
of-the cares becomes to-him remedy,
als her des smerzen entsebet,
when he of-the pain feels,
wande im daz ungemach gebet
for to-him the discomfort gives
einen anderen mût;
an other spirit;
als ez dem fleische wê tût,
as it to-the flesh woe does,
und ime unsanfte wirt getân,
and to-him ungently becomes done,
sô mûz diu angest zergân
so must the fear pass
des smerzen mit dem leide:
of-the pain with the sorrow:
dise habent aber beide
these have but both
den smerzen mit den sorgen
the pain with the cares
den âbent und den morgen]
the evening and the morning]
in dem abgrunde,
in the abyss,
daz dirz gesagen kunde
that to-thee-it tell could
nieman in ertrîche
no-one on earth
der lebet mennislîche,
who lives humanly,

als ich dir ez sagen mach
as I to-thee it tell may

und als ichz selbe gesach,
and as I-it self saw,

wande ich dare komen bin.
for I thither come am.

mich hete gefûret dar in
me had led there in

diu frouwe Tîsiphône:
the lady Tisiphone:

daz ir mîn trohtîn lône,
that to-her my Lord should-reward,

daz sie mich dannen brahte!
that she me thence brought!

wie dicke ich sint gedahte
how often I since thought

des wunders daz ich dâ vernam:
of-the wonder that I there heard:

ich was frô deich dannen quam.‘
I was glad that-I thence came.‘

Si sprach ‚Ênêas vartgenôz,
She spoke ‚Aeneas journey-fellow,

daz jâmer is vile grôz,
the misery is very great,

daz ich dâ inne gesach,
which I there within saw,

daz ich gesagen niene mach
that I tell not-at-all may

die nôt die ich dâ vant,
the distress which I there found,

dâ der wirt Râdamant
where the host Rhadamanthus

die sêle jâmerlîche quelet.
the souls wretchedly torments.

dicke her in vore zelet
often he to-them before recounts

ir missetâte.
their misdeeds.

frû unde spâte
early and late

ir schande er in verwîzet.
their disgrace he to-them reproaches.

der bôsheit her sich flîzet
of-the wickedness he himself busies

der schalk Râdamantûs.
the rogue Rhadamanthus.

dâ inne sitzet ouch Tantalûs
there within sits also Tantalus

in eime wazzer unz an die kelen
in a water up to the throat

und mûz iedoch vor dorste quelen,
and must yet for thirst suffer,

swie her in dem wazzer sî,
however he in the water be,

daz sînem munde is vile bî
which to-his mouth is very by

und im sô nâhen flûzet:
and to-him so near flows:

des her doch niht genûzet.
of-which he yet not enjoys.

vor hunger lîdet her grôze nôt,
for hunger suffers he great distress,

daz her gerner wâre tôt
that he more-gladly were dead

beidiu naht unde tach,
both night and day,

wander sterben niene mach.
for-he die not-at-all may.

mit quâlen mûz̧ her werben,
with torments must he strive,

wan môhte her ersterben,
oh-that might he die,

ez̧ wâre im lieber tûsent stunt.
it were to-him dearer a-thousand times.

im hanget vor sînen munt
to-him hangs before his mouth

ephel und ander spîse,
apples and other food,

und alser vile lîse
and as-he very softly

mit dem munde hin nâch vât,
with the mouth thither after catches,

sô verre ez̧ hin dane gât,
so far it thither away goes,

daz̧ hers gewinnen niene mach.
that he-it win not-at-all may.

des hât her naht unde tach
of-that has he night and day

vile michel arbeit.
very great hardship.

her weiz̧ wol die wârheit,
he knows well the truth,

daz̧ her ne mach niht genesen.
that he — may not recover.

dâ bî martert man die resen,
there by tortures one the giants,

den man ouch vil wê tût,
to-whom one also much woe does,

die dorch ir ubermût
who through their arrogance

ze himele stîgen wolden
to heaven climb would

und die gote enterben solden
and the gods disinherit should

und verstôzen mit gewalt;
and thrust-out with force;

der iegelîch sîn engalt.
of-them each for-it paid.

si stihten michel wunder.
they wrought great wonder.

dâ was einer under,
there was one among,

der des wolde wânen,
who of-it would ween,

daz her Dîânen
that he Diana

ze wîbe solde gewinnen
as woman should win

und sin solde minnen,
and she-him should love,

der was geheizen Tîtîûs.
who was called Tityus.

den quelet Râdamantûs
him torments Rhadamanthus

mit wunderlîchen dingen:
with wondrous things:

her liget ruckelingen
he lies on-his-back

der arme verlorne.
the poor lost-one.

ûf sîner brust vorne
on his breast in-front

sint gîre gesezzen,
are vultures seated,

die im sîn herze ezzen
which to-him his heart eat

immer zallen zîten.
ever at-all times.

starke sie strîten
strongly they fight

obe der wunden,
above the wound,

daz sis ze keinen stunden
that they-it at no hours

nimmer vergezzent.
ever forget.

al daz sie sîn gezzent
all that they of-him have-eaten

daz wesset al zehant wider.
that grows all at-once back.

her liget verre hin nider
he lies far thither down

unde quelet vil sêre,
and suffers very sorely,

des im nimmer mêre
of-which to-him never more

nie ne sal werden bûz.
ever — shall become remedy.

die marter her dolen mûz.
the torture he endure must.

sîn quâle is im endelôs.
his torment is to-him endless.

daz screib allez Mînôs,
that wrote all Minos,

der sich des underwant,
who himself of-it undertook,

daz herz mit lôze bevant
that he-it with lot found-out

mit listechlîchen dingen
with cunning things

al besunderlingen
all separately

die wîze von der helle,
the torments of the hell,

die nieman mohte erzellen,
which no-one might recount,

daz sim iemer an der erden
that they-to-him ever on the earth

alle kunt mohten werden.‘
all known might become.‘

Anchises in Elysium

XVII

Leaving hell on the left, Aeneas sticks the branch in the earth at the parting of the ways, as the Sibyl bids, and they take the right-hand road to the Elysian Fields. Anchises welcomes him but will not be kissed, being a spirit. At a clear stream he shows him his battles in Italy, Alba, his unborn son Silvius, whom Lavinia will bear in a wilderness, and Romulus, who will found Rome to rule the world. He warns that hunger will make them eat their platters where they are to stay. The Sibyl brings Aeneas back to his men.

Dô daz allez was getân,
When that all was done,

dô liezen sie die helle stân
then let they the hell stand

zû der winsteren hant,
at the left hand,

dâ der schalk Râdamant
where the rogue Rhadamanthus

selbe inne wirt was.
self within host was.

Sibille unde Ênêas
Sibyl and Aeneas

giengen allez vore baz.
went all forward further.

Sibille gebôt ime daz,
Sibyl commanded to-him that,

daz herz rîs dâ liezе
that he-the branch there should-leave

und tâte als sin hiezе.
and should-do as she-him should-bid.

als diu frouwe daz gesprach,
when the lady that spoke,

daz rîs her in die erde stach,
the branch he into the earth stuck,

an die wegescheide.
at the parting-of-ways.

dô volgeten si beide
then followed they both

der zesewen strâzen.
the right road.

daz rîs hiez sin dâ lâzen,
the branch bade she-him there leave,

daz her sich dâ bekande,
that he himself there should-know,

alser wider wande
as-he back turned

undez dâ nâme,
and-it there should-take,

sô her wider quâme,
when he back should-come,

als alle die heten getân,
as all those had done,

die dâ solden vore gân.
who there should before go.

her tet alse sie in bat.
he did as she him asked.

dô quâmen sie an eine stat,
then came they to a place,

dâ ez vile schône was,
where it very fair was,

dâ vant der hêre Ênêas
there found the lord Aeneas

sînen vater Anchîsen
his father Anchises

den alden und den wîsen.
the old and the wise.

des frowete sich der wîgant.
of-that rejoiced himself the warrior.

diu stat, dâ hern inne vant
the place, where he-him in found

und dâ her in ouch liez,
and where he him also left,

ich sage û wie diu hiez:
I tell to-you how it was-called:

Elysîî gevilde.
Elysian fields.

dâ vant der helt milde
there found the hero generous

zierheit maneger slahte,
adornment of-many kind,

daz nieman konde gahten.
which no-one could reckon.

Dô her ze sînem vater gienk,
When he to his father went,

minnechlîche er in enphienk,
lovingly he him received,

her hiez in willekomen sîn.
he bade him welcome be.

‚Ênêas' sprach her, ‚sun mîn,
‚Aeneas' spoke he, ‚son mine,

ich sage dir die wârheit:
I tell thee the truth:

daz dû dise arbeit
that thou this hardship

dorch mînen willen hâst getân,
for my will hast done,

des sal ez dir vil wole ergân
of-that shall it to-thee very well go

beidiu zêren und ze fromen,
both to-honors and to profit,

daz dû here bist komen
that thou hither art come

von unser meister gebote.
by our masters' command.

ez habent dir die gote
it have to-thee the gods

dorch fruntschaft gegunnen,
for friendship granted,

dû hâst der mite gewunnen
thou hast there with won

ir aller holde.'
of-them all favor.'

kussen her in wolde.
kiss he him would.

‚nein' sprach her, ‚sun mîn,
‚no' spoke he, ‚son mine,

des ne mach niet sîn,
that — may not be,

daz mich ieman berîne:
that me anyone touch:

swie fleischlîch ich schîne,
however fleshly I seem,

ichn bin doch niwan ein geist,
I am yet but a spirit,

als dû selbe wole weist.‘
as thou self well knowest.‘

Dô hern berihtet hete des,
When he-him informed had of-it,

dô leite in Anchîses
then led him Anchises

an ein wazzer daz dâ flôz
to a water that there flowed

scône unde niht ze grôz,
fair and not too great,

lûter unde reine.
clear and pure.

edile gesteine
noble gems

was aller der grunt.
was all the ground.

aldâ teter ime kunt
there made-he to-him known

unde liez in gesehen
and let him see

allez daz im solde geschehen:
all that to-him should happen:

rouwe unde wunne
rue and bliss

und allez sîn kunne,
and all his kin,

daz sint von ime quam,
that since from him came,

und wie getân ende ez allez nam
and how made end it all took

umb in und sîn geslehte.
about him and his lineage.

her zeigete ime rehte
he showed to-him rightly

die storme, die her sint vaht,
the assaults, which he since fought,

und wie her wart wonehaht
and how he became settled

in Itâlischeme rîche,
in Italian realm,

dâ her sich manlîche
where he himself manfully

mit angesten berihte
with fears set-right

unde die borch stihte,
and the castle founded,

die zeiget her im ouch,
which showed he to-him also,

daz her dar an niht ne louch.
that he there on not — lied.

zaller êrst Albâne,
at-all first Alba,

ein borch wol getâne,
a castle well made,

und manege ander dar nâ.
and many-a other there after.

sînen sun zeigt her im dâ,
his son showed he to-him there,

der dannoch ungeboren was.
who still unborn was.

den sach gerne Ênêas.
him saw gladly Aeneas.

daz was ein seltsâne dink.
that was a strange thing.

‚sihestû jenen jungelink,
‚seest-thou yonder youngling,

der dort stêt mit deme spere?
who there stands with the spear?

dorch den fûrdich dich here,
for him led-I thee hither,

den mahtû gerne erkennen,
him mayst-thou gladly know,

den sal von dir gewinnen
him shall from thee win

diu schône Lavîne,
the fair Lavinia,

diu junge winje dîne,
the young wife thine,

des salt dû sîn vil gewis.
of-that shalt thou be very certain.

der kunich der ir vater is
the king who her father is

der is geheizen Latîn.
he is called Latinus.

Silviûs sal her genant sîn
Silvius shall he named be

dâ obene ûf der erden
there above on the earth

und sal geboren werden
and shall born be

in einer wiltnisse:
in a wilderness:

daz wizzest vil gewisse,
that know very surely,

Sun, hâstû wol vernomen?
Son, hast-thou well heard?

von Silviô sal ein helt komen,
from Silvius shall a hero come,

der Silviûs Ênêas heiʒen sal.
who Silvius Aeneas be-called shall.

der sal dir gelîchen al
he shall to-thee resemble all

an hûte unde an hâre
in skin and in hair

(daʒ sage ich dir zewâre),
(that tell I to-thee truly),

von siten und von sinnen,
in manners and in sense,

der sal ein sun gewinnen,
he shall a son win,

der sal heiʒen Ênêas,
who shall be-called Aeneas,

der dir bescheret was
who to-thee allotted was

uber manich jâr hie bevoren.
over many-a year here before.

von ime soln werden geboren
from him shall be born

in sîneme geslehte
in his lineage

die mâren gûten knehte,
the famous good knights,

vil gewaldech alle ensamen,
very mighty all together,

und gewinnent kunechlîchen namen.
and win kingly names.

daʒ merke (sprach her), sun mîn,
that mark (spoke he), son mine,

Rômulûs sal der eine sîn,
Romulus shall the one be,
der mâre und der rîche,
the famous and the rich,
der vil gewaldechlîche
who very mightily
daz rîche sal berihten
the realm shall rule
und sal Rôme stihten
and shall Rome found
und sal ir sînen namen geben.
and shall to-it his name give.
der sal vil hêrlîche leben,
he shall very lordly live,
wand Rôme houbetstat wesen sal
for Rome capital be shall
in der werlde uberal.
in the world everywhere.
des mahtû haben wunne,
of-that mayst-thou have bliss,
daz die von dîme kunne
that those of thy kin
die werlt soln bedwingen
the world shall subdue
mit meisterlîchen dingen.
with masterly things.
sô michel wirt ir kraft,
so great becomes their power,
daz si gemachent zinshaft
that they make tributary
diu lant alliu gelîche
the lands all alike
ze rômescheme rîche.‘
to-the Roman realm.‘

Anchîses sprach aber dô
Anchises spoke again then

sînem lieben sune zô
to-his dear son to

‚Ênêas sun mîn,
‚Aeneas son mine,

des mahtû wole frô sîn,
of-that mayst-thou well glad be,

daz dû hie hâst vernomen,
what thou here hast heard,

daz dîn kunne sal komen
that thy kin shall come

ze alsô grôzen êren.
to so great honors.

nû saltû hinnen kêren
now shalt-thou hence turn

zû den dînen mannen.
to the thy men.

als dû geverest dannen,
as thou farest thence,

sô kumestû vil gereite
so comest-thou very readily

uber daz mere breite
over the sea broad

(sprach der alde Anchîses)
(spoke the old Anchises)

sun, gedenke vil wol des,
son, remember very well of-it,

daz ich dich wîse:
that I thee guide:

û sal aver diu spîse
to-you shall but the food

ein teil tûre werden,
a part dear become,

êr ir komet zer erden
ere you come to-the earth

jenehalb uber mere,
on-yonder-side over sea,

sô daz dû und dîn here,
so that thou and thy host,

die helide wol vermezzen,
the heroes well bold,

dorch nôt solt ir ezzen
for need shall you eat

ûwer schuzeln ûf ûwerm tische,
your platters upon your table,

âlse fleisch unde vische
as flesh and fish

und als ander lîbnar.
and as other victuals.

und swenne sô dû kumest dar,
and whenever so thou comest thither,

sun, dâ dû diz getûst,
son, where thou this dost,

sô bistû dâ dû wonen mûst
so art-thou where thou dwell must

und ze dînem ende blîben.
and to thy end remain.

swer dich dâ wil vertrîben,
whoever thee there will drive-out,

des saltû dich vil wole erweren
of-him shalt-thou thyself very well defend

unde dînen lîb generen
and thy body save

unde doch mit arbeiten.
and yet with hardships.

dîn dink saltû wol bereiten
thy thing shalt-thou well prepare

manlîche dâr nâ
manfully there after

unde vesten dich dâ
and fortify thee there

sô dû aller beste maht;
as thou of-all best mayst;

daz is dir gût bedaht.‘
that is to-thee well considered.‘

Anchîses sweich dô stille.
Anchises kept-silent then still.

Ênêas und Sibille
Aeneas and Sibyl

urloub ze ime nâmen.
leave of him took.

schiere sie dô quâmen,
quickly they then came,

ûz der helle hine wider
out-of the hell thither back

dannen si wârn gevaren nider
whence they were fared down

mit tage und mit nahte.
by day and by night.

dô siu hin wider brahte,
when she thither back brought,

dâ sîne man wâren,
where his men were,

die sîn ungerne enbâren,
who him unwillingly did-without,

mit urloub sie von ime schiet,
with leave she from him parted,

alsus saget uns daz liet.
thus tells us the song.

The Landing in Italy

XVIII

Aeneas and his host sail to the mouth of the Tiber, where Montalbane now stands. Eating on the shore, the Trojans make platters of their bread, and Ascanius mocks that they are eating their platters, which Aeneas takes as his father's sign. They rejoice, offer to the gods, and bring the ships into the Tiber. Aeneas sends Ylionix with three hundred knights and gifts, among them Menelaus's golden cup, to King Latinus at Laurentum, who receives them well, gives the envoys three hundred horses, and sends ten to Aeneas.

Der hêre unde sîn here
The lord and his host

fûren dô uber mere
fared then over sea

dar si gelucke sande.
whither them luck sent.

dô quâmen sie ze lande,
then came they to land,

da diu Tiber in daz mere gêt,
where the Tiber into the sea goes,

dâ noch Montalbâne stêt.
where yet Montalbane stands.

die hiez her dô vesten.
it bade he then fortify.

mit den mûden gesten
with the weary strangers

gienk her ûz an daz lant.
went he out onto the land.

den gemach, den her dâ vant,
the ease, which he there found,

nam frôlîche
took joyfully

Ênêas der rîche
Aeneas the rich

und sîne vartgenôze
and his journey-fellows

lutzel unde grôze.
small and great.

niht langer sie ne beiten,
not longer they — waited,

ir ezzen sie gereiten,
their meal they readied,

so si aller beste mohten dô
as they of-all best might then

und giengen sitzen dar zô.
and went to-sit there to.

Dô si wâren gesezzen
When they were seated

unde solden ezzen
and should eat

frôlîch als si tâten,
joyfully as they did,

alsez was berâten
as-it was provided

do si an daz lant quâmen,
when they onto the land came,

daz brôt sie dô nâmen
the bread they then took

unde legetenz ûf ir schôz.
and laid-it on their lap.

des dwank sie der hunger grôz,
to-that constrained them the hunger great,

den sie heten erliden.
which they had suffered.

von dem brôte sie sniden
from the bread they cut

schuzeln vile reine,
platters very clean,

grôze unde kleine,
great and small,

do si sich gemacheten dar zô;
when they themselves made there to;

dar ûf legeten sie dô
there upon laid they then

ir fleisch unde ir vische.
their flesh and their fish.

sine heten ander tische
they had other tables

niwan ir knie unde ir bein.
except their knees and their legs.

daz gemarkte ir dehein
that marked of-them none

aller der die dâ sâzen.
of-all those who there sat.

dô sie daz fleisch gâzen,
when they the flesh had-eaten,

die schuzzeln âzen sie dar nâ.
the platters ate they there after.

daz gemarkte schiere dâ
that marked quickly there

Ascânjûs der jungelink.
Ascanius the youngling.

‚diz is ein hoveslîch dink,'
‚this is a courtly thing,'

sprach Ênêases sun,
spoke Aeneas's son,

‚waz welt ir des tûn?
‚what will you of-it do?

des ne wil ich niht vergezzen, 3785
of-that — will I not forget,

daz wir unser schuzeln ezzen.
that we our platters eat.

(daz sprach her dorch sînen spot)
(that spoke he for his mockery)

wil mir mîn meister got
(if)-will me my master God

sô gehelfen hinnen,
so help hence,

daz ich noch hûs gewinne, 3790
that I yet house win,

sô wil ichz gerne zellen
so will I-it gladly tell

zeime bîspelle
as-an example

her nâch uber lank,
here after over long,

daz uns diu nôt dar zû dwank,
that us the need there to constrained,

daz wir unser schuzeln âzen; 3795
that we our platters ate;

daz ne wil ich niht lâzen.‘
that — will I not leave.‘

Daz gehôrde Ênêas,
That heard Aeneas,

daz im vile lieb was.
which to-him very dear was.

harde frowete her sich des.
very rejoiced he himself of-that.

her sprach ‚mîn vater Anchîses
he spoke ‚my father Anchises

der sagete mir diz rehte
he told me this rightly

und sprach ‘daz ichs gedehte
and spoke ‘that I-it should-remember

unde ez wol vernâme,
and it well should-perceive,

ob ich immer dare quâme,
if I ever thither should-come,

da ich mîne schuzeln âze,
where I my platters should-eat,

daz ich des niht vergâze,
that I of-it not should-forget,

daz wir dâ blîben solden.
that we there remain should.

nû sîn wir dâ wir wolden.
now are we where we would.

ich hân ez rehte vernomen,
I have it rightly heard,

wir sîn in daz lant komen,
we are into the land come,

des wir lange haben gegert.
which we long have desired.

die gote habent uns des gewert,
the gods have us of-it granted,

des wir si lange bâten,
of-what we them long asked,

si scholen uns noch berâten.‘
they shall us yet provide.‘

Dô her geredete alsô,
When he spoke so,

dô wordens alle vile frô.
then became-they all very glad.

ir leides sie vergâzen,
of-their sorrow they forgot,

niht langer sie ne sâzen,
not longer they — sat,

schiere sie ûf sprungen,
quickly they up sprang,

si spilden unde rungen
they played and wrestled

und opherden ir abgoten,
and offered to-their idols,

daz wart in allen geboten,
that was to-them all commanded,

daz si alsô tâten
that they so should-do

und die gote bâten,
and the gods should-ask,

daz sis mûsten gewalden
that they-it must rule

unde in hulfen behalden
and them should-help keep

daz lant dâ si wâren an.
the land where they were on.

diu schif fûrden sie dan
the ships brought they thence

in die Tiber ûz dem mere.
into the Tiber out-of the sea.

dô was der hêre und sîn here
then was the lord and his host

frôlîches mûtes,
of-joyful spirit,

si froweten sich des gûtes,
they rejoiced themselves of-the good,

des si wânden haben dâ.
which they weened to-have there.

ez was dannoch vil unnâ.
it was yet very far.

si wânden schaffen ir gemach,
they weened to-make their ease,

daz man dâ harde widersprach
that one there greatly gainsaid

daz gemach wart in vil ungereit;
the ease became to-them very unready;

ê danne si michel arbeit
ere than they great hardship

dar umbe heten erliden,
there about had suffered,

wande si vohten unde striden
for they fought and battled

zû vil manegen stunden
at very many-a hour

mit den sie dâ vunden
with those-whom they there found

und dien daz lant werden
and to-them the land deny

mit schilden und mit swerden.
with shields and with swords.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

alsô dare komen was
so thither come was

ze Itâljen in daz lant,
to Italy into the land,

dô frâgete her die her dâ vant
then asked he those-whom he there found

von dem lande mâre
of the land tidings

und wer dâ kunich wâre,
and who there king were,

wander dâ gerne wolde sîn.
for-he there gladly would be.

dô saget man im, daz Latîn
then told one to-him, that Latinus

kunich wâre in deme lande.
king were in the land.

sîne boten her im dô sande,
his messengers he to-him then sent,

driu hundert ritter gûte
three hundred knights good

mit gerendem mûte,
with desiring spirit,

daz her dâ blîben wolde,
that he there remain would,

sô wolder sîne holde
so would-he his favor

gerne gewinnen.
gladly win.

her sande ime ze minnen
he sent to-him for love

ein sceptrum und ein crône,
a scepter and a crown,

eine gebe vil schône,
a gift very fair,

ein mantel und ein vingerlîn
a mantle and a ring

und einen koph goldîn,
and a cup golden,

der des kuneges Menelâî was.
which the king Menelaus's was.

den sande ime Ênêas,
it sent to-him Aeneas,

wander mit fride wolde leben.
for-he with peace would live.

Menelâûs het in ime gegeben,
Menelaus had it to-him given,

dô her ze ime was gesant,
when he to him was sent,

dô her ze Troie an den sant
when he to Troy onto the sand

zaller êriste quam.
at-all first came.

diu gebe diu was lussam,
the gift it was lovely,

die Ênêas dar sande
which Aeneas thither sent

deme kunege von dem lande;
to-the king of the land;

wand ime was sîner holde nôt.
for to-him was of-his favor need.

sînen dienest her ime enbôt
his service he to-him sent-word

vile minnechlîche,
very lovingly,

daz hern in sîme rîche
that he-him in his realm

wolde lâzen genesen,
would let live,

daz her im willich solde wesen
that he to-him willing should be

zallem sîneme gebote.
to-all his command.

daz swûr her bî sînem gote,
that swore he by his god,

swaz sô her in hieze,
whatever so he him should-bid,

daz̨ her des niht ne liez̨e
that he of-it naught — should-leave

dorch deheiner slahte arbeit
through any kind-of hardship

unde er sîne wârheit
and he his faith

nimmer an ime gebrâche.
never on him should-break.

Yljônix der gesprâche
Ylionix the eloquent

der leite die geselleschaft
he led the company

unde warb die boteschaft,
and pursued the message,

Dô daz̨ allez̨ was getân,
When that all was done,

daz̨ Ênêas der Troiân
that Aeneas the Trojan

die boten dâ hin sande,
the messengers there thither sent,

dô nâmen si von dem lande
then took they from the land

lûte die si leiten.
people who them led.

niht langer si ne beiten,
not longer they — waited,

Yljônix fûr dô dannen
Ylionix fared then thence

mit sînes hêren mannen
with his lord's men

und mit den die si wîsten.
and with those who them guided.

mit schatze sie sich spîsten,
with treasure they themselves provisioned,

den die soumâre trûgen.
which the pack-horses bore.

sie funden kouf genûgen
they found trade enough

uber allez daz lant.
over all the land.

hêrlîch was ir gewant,
lordly was their clothing,

des si gnûch mit in nâmen.
of-which they enough with them took.

zû Laurente sie quâmen,
to Laurentum they came,

dar si doch gerne wolden sîn.
where they yet gladly would be.

dâ was der kunich Latîn,
there was the king Latinus,

der si vile wol enphienk.
who them very well received.

Yljônix dar vore gienk
Ylionix there before went

unde ein jungelink sîn neve.
and a youngling his nephew.

dô man Ênêases geve
when one Aeneas's gift

vor Latînum den kunich trûch,
before Latinus the king bore,

si dûhte in lobelîch genûch:
it seemed to-him praiseworthy enough:

ez dûhtin michel fruntschaft.
it seemed-to-him great friendship.

dô worben sie die boteschaft
then pursued they the message

als si vil wol kunden.
as they very well could.

den kunich sie dô funden
the king they then found

in hogen unde in michelm mût.
in mirth and in great spirit.

diu botschaft dûhte in gût
the message seemed to-him good

und diu gebe êrsam.
and the gift honorable.

danklîchen her si nam
thankfully he it took

alsez michel reht was.
as-it great right was.

‚ûwer frunt Ênêas
‚your friend Aeneas

sal mir willikomen sîn!
shall to-me welcome be!

daz wirt ime wole schîn,
that becomes to-him well seen,

mûz ich und her leben.‘
(if)-must I and he live.‘

dô hiez her den boten geben
then bade he to-the messengers give

ze danke und ze lône
for thanks and for reward

driu hundert ros schône
three hundred horses fair

zêren unde ze minnen.
to-honors and for love.

diu mohte wol gewinnen
which might well win

der kunich in dem lande.
the king in the land.

Ênêase her sande
to-Aeneas he sent
zeheniu vil hêrlîche
ten very lordly
Latînûs der rîche.
Latinus the rich.

Latinus's Answer, and Alba Founded

XIX

Latinus tells the envoys that the gods have promised his daughter and his realm to Aeneas, though his queen had pressed him to swear her to Turnus, and Turnus must give her up. Aeneas, meanwhile, finds a steep hill with a spring by the sea and has his men fortify it, cutting through the neck and building towers and a bridge; they name it Alba. The envoys bring Latinus's message and the Trojans feast. The queen then rages at Latinus for giving Lavinia to the faithless Trojan.

Dô ez alsô ergienk,
When it so happened,
daz her die gâbe enphienk
that he the gifts received
und die boteschaft vernam,
and the message heard,
dô teter als im wol gezam,
then did-he as to-him well befitted,
wander ein edel kunich was.
for-he a noble king was.
‚ûwer frunt Ênêas
‚your friend Aeneas
der is mir willikomen hie.
he is to-me welcome here.

ich wâne, daz ern quâme nie
I ween, that he came never

dâ her willikomener wâre.
where he more-welcome were.

ir solt ime sagen ein mâre,
you shall to-him tell a tale,

des her frô wesen mach.
of-which he glad be may.

ich weiz ez wol manegen tach
I know it well many-a day

unde vil manech jâr
and very many-a year

âne zwîvel vor wâr,
without doubt for true,

daz er noch here quâme,
that he yet hither should-come,

ê dan ich mîn ende nâme,
ere than I my end should-take,

daz ich daz solde geleben.
that I that should live-to-see.

mîn tohter wil ich ime geben
my daughter will I to-him give

ze minnen und ze wîbe
for love and for woman

und nâch mînem lîbe
and after my body

mîn lant und mîn rîche.
my land and my realm.

daz saget im wârlîche,
that tell to-him truly,

wande ez is mir geboten
for it is to-me commanded

und gewîssaget von den goten:
and foretold by the gods:

die wil ichs lâzen walden.
them will I-it let rule.

ich hân si ime gehalden
I have her for-him kept

unze an dise stunt.
until to this hour.

ez is mir lange wole kunt,
it is to-me long well known,

daz her si haben solde:
that he her have should:

ich wolde oder enwolde,
I would or not-would,

die gote hânt si ime gegeben.
the gods have her to-him given.

soldich nû dar wider streben,
should-I now there against strive,

daz wâre ein unminne.
that were an unlove.

mîn wîb diu kuniginne
my woman the queen

diu ne liez mich nie gerûn,
she — let me never rest,

ê ich der mite mûste tûn,
ere I there with must do

des ich gerne hete enboren.
what I gladly had foregone.

ir hât ein edel man gesworen:
to-her has a noble man sworn:

dem ne mach si werden niet.
to-him — may she become not.

wan daz man mir ez geriet,
except that one to-me it counseled,

ich ne hetez nie getân:
I — had-it never done:

sie mûz̧ haben der Troiân,
her must have the Trojan,

ûr hêre, dem si was beschert.
your lord, to-whom she was allotted.

daz̧n mach nû niht sîn erwert.
that may now not be prevented.

ichn rede ez̧ niht umbe daz̧,
I speak it not about that,

ichn gunde ir Turnûse baz̧
I-not granted her to-Turnus better

dem vil edelen herzogen,
the very noble duke,

daz̧ wizz̧et vor wâr ungelogen,
that know for true unlied,

ob ez̧ immer mohte sîn.
if it ever might be.

mîn rîch und diu tohter mîn
my realm and the daughter mine

wâren wol zû ime bewant,
were well to him bestowed,

beidiu lûte unde lant,
both people and land,

wan daz̧ ez̧ wesen niene mach.
except that it be not-at-all may.

ûrm hêren, den ich nie gesach,
to-your lord, whom I never saw,

dem is sie enteile getân:
to-him is she as-portion done:

Turnûs mûz̧ ir abe stân,
Turnus must of-her off stand,

ez̧ sî uns lieb oder leit.
it be to-us dear or grievous.

her is ein ritter gemeit
he is a knight glad
unde ein stolzer jungelink.
and a proud youngling.
ime sal ditze dink
to-him shall this thing
vil ubile gevallen
very ill please
und sînen frunden allen,
and to-his friends all,
den eigen und den frîen;
the bond and the free;
ouch solen sie mich zîen
also shall they me accuse
der scholt umb dise missetât.
of-the guilt for this misdeed.
iedoch nis es ander rât;
yet is-not of-it other counsel;
es ne mach niht werden bûz,
it — may not become remedy,
wand mîn tohter haben mûz
for my daughter have must
ûwer hêre Ênêas,
your lord Aeneas,
deme sie bescheret was
to-whom she allotted was
êr si ie worde geboren.
ere she ever were born.
Turnûs hât si iemêr verloren.‘
Turnus has her for-ever lost.‘
Dô sprach aber Latîn
Then spoke again Latinus
‚ir solt des vil gewis sîn,
‚you shall of-it very certain be,

saget Ênêase daz,
tell to-Aeneas that,

daz her sich trôste deste baz
that he himself should-comfort the better

unde zû uns kêre.
and to us should-turn.

hie wirt im michel êre,
here becomes to-him great honor,

sal es gelucke walden.
(if)-shall of-it luck rule.

ich wil in wol behalden
I will him well keep

(sprach der kunich rîche)
(spoke the king rich)

daz saget im wârlîche,
that tell to-him truly,

daz ich ir ime wole gan.
that I her to-him well grant.

ich bin aber ein alt man,
I am but an old man,

alse ir selbe wol gesiet:
as you yourselves well see:

ichn mach hinnen vort niet
I may hence forth not

vehten noch strîten
fight nor battle

noch gewâfent rîten:
nor armed ride:

mir wâre zîtiger gemach.‘
to-me were timelier ease.‘

dô der kunich daz gesprach,
when the king that spoke,

daz her sie getrôste alsô,
that he them comforted so,

des wâren dô die boten frô,
of-that were then the messengers glad,

daz sie ie dare quâmen.
that they ever thither came.

urloub sie dô nâmen,
leave they then took,

in was getrôstet ir mût,
to-them was comforted their spirit,

daz si nehein michel gût
that they no great goods

dar vor niht ennâmen.
there for at-all took.

dô si dar wider quâmen,
when they thither back came,

al dâ ir hêre was,
all where their lord was,

dô was der hêre Ênêas
then was the lord Aeneas

geriten ûzer dem here
ridden out-of the host

ûf einen berch bî deme mere,
onto a hill by the sea,

der stechel was unde hô:
which steep was and high:

des was der hêre vile frô.
of-that was the lord very glad.

gût lant dar umbe lach.
good land there about lay.

dô hern rehte besach
when he-it rightly looked-at

die hôge und die wîte,
the height and the breadth,

daz man in an der sîte
that one him on the side

niemanne endorfte weren,
against-no-one needed defend,

ob in al diu werlt wolde heren,
if him all the world would harry,

wole geviel im diu stat.
well pleased to-him the place.

helfe her dô bat
help he then asked

die gote sîne mâgen.
the gods his kinsmen.

wand alle die'n gesâgen
for all who-him saw

die dûhter gût ze lobene,
them seemed-he good to praise,

wand ûf dem berge obene
for on the hill above

sprank ein brunne ze mâzen grôz.
sprang a spring in measure great.

starke her dernider flôz
strongly it down flowed

von dem berge in daz mere.
from the hill into the sea.

dar legete her sîn here
there laid he his host

und saget in waz her wolde,
and told them what he would,

daz her in bûwen solde,
that he it build should,

obez sie gût dohte,
if-it them good seemed,

so er aller beste mohte.
as he of-all best might.

ez dûhte si alle ensament gût.
it seemed to-them all together good.

dô vernam her ir mût,
when heard he their spirit,

manlîche erz ane vienk.
manfully he-it at began.

einhalb dar zû gienk
on-one-side there to went

ein hals der ne was niht breit.
a neck which — was not broad.

daz was doch diu meiste arbeit,
that was yet the greatest hardship,

daz der hals dorchbrochen wart,
that the neck through-broken was,

want der vels der was hart.
for the rock it was hard.

die borch nandens Albâne.
the castle named-they Alba.

dô griffen die Troiâne
then gripped the Trojans

manlîche dar zû
manfully there to

beidiu spâte unde frû,
both late and early,

starke sie sich rûrden.
strongly they themselves stirred.

dar ûf sie dô fûrden
there upon they then carried

ir spîse unde ir wâfen.
their food and their weapons.

si mûsten lutzel slâfen,
they must little sleep,

si worhten unde wachten,
they worked and watched,

ir borch si veste machten,
their castle they firm made,

wan des was in vile nôt,
for of-it was to-them very need,

si wâren anders alle tôt.
they were otherwise all dead.

Sint sie sichs underwunden
Since they themselves-of-it undertook

unde es ouch begunden,
and it also began,

sô bûtens unde worhten
so built-they and worked

als si es wol bedorhten,
as they it well needed,

si hiewen unde hûben,
they hewed and heaved,

dorch den hals si grûben
through the neck they dug

zû der selben zîte
at the same time

graben vile wîte
ditches very wide

tiefe unde werehaft
deep and defensible

mit aller ir kraft,
with all their strength,

want si dâ blîben wolden
for they there remain would

und sich dâ weren solden,
and themselves there defend should,

ob es nôt wâre.
if it need were.

berfride und erkâre
towers and bays

macheten sie vile dâ
made they many there

bî einander gnûch nâ.
by one-another enough near.

steine sie trûgen,
stones they carried,

ir brucke sie slûgen
their bridge they struck

ob den graben wîten,
over the ditches wide,

daz si uber mohten rîten,
that they over might ride,

beidiu rîten unde gân.
both ride and walk.

dô daz alsô was getân,
when that so was done,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

alsô drûf komen was,
so thereon come was,

dô sach her von der borch nider,
then looked he from the castle down,

dâ die boten quâmen wider
where the messengers came back

harde frôlîche,
very joyfully,

die Latînûs der rîche
whom Latinus the rich

wole hete gelâzen.
well had dismissed.

die hêren niht vergâzen
the lords not forgot

des in bevolen was.
what to-them commended was.

wol enphienk si Ênêas
well received them Aeneas

dâ si zû ime quâmen.
where they to him came.

zeiner sprâche sie in nâmen
to-a parley they him took

und sageten im die botescaft,
and told to-him the message,

die minne und die fruntschaft,
the love and the friendship,

die im Latînûs enbôt,
which to-him Latinus sent-word,

daz her alle sîne nôt
that he all his distress

wol uberwinden solde,
well overcome should,

wanderm geben wolde
for-he-to-him give would

sîn tohter und sîn rîche,
his daughter and his realm,

daz her sichs manlîche
that he himself-of-it manfully

schiere underwunde,
quickly should-undertake,

wanderm wole gunde.
for-he-to-him well granted.

Dô daz vernam Ênêas,
When that heard Aeneas,

dem ez vile lieb was,
to-whom it very dear was,

frôlîche schiet her dannen,
joyfully parted he thence,

her sagetez sînen mannen
he told-it to-his men

armen unde rîchen
poor and rich

allen gelîche
all alike

dem minnern und dem mêren.
to-the lesser and to-the greater.

dô wart under den hêren
then became among the lords

ein wunne vile grôzȩ.
a bliss very great.

die mûden hûsgenôzȩ
the weary house-fellows

worden alle vile frô,
became all very glad,

daz in der kunich alsô
that to-them the king so

gûten trôst hete enboten.
good comfort had sent-word.

si oppherden ir abgoten
they offered to-their idols

und macheten grôzȩ wirtschaft
and made great feasting

dorch die gûten boteschaft,
for the good message,

die sie heten vernomen.
which they had heard.

dô daz alsô was komen,
when that so was come,

dô was der kunech Latînûs
then was the king Latinus

ze Laurente in sîme hûs,
at Laurentum in his house,

alsez ime wole gezam
as-it to-him well befitted

dô daz mâre vernam
when that tidings heard

sîn wîb diu kuneginne,
his woman the queen,

mit zorne âne minne
with wrath without love

gienk si vor den kunich stân
went she before the king stand

und wart vil ubele getân.
and became very ill made.

ir zuhte sie vergaz,
her breeding she forgot,

unsanfte sie nider saz,
ungently she down sat,

daz si dem kunege niht enneich.
that she to-the king not bowed.

dô si eine wîle gesweich,
when she a while kept-silent,

dô sprach sie mit zorne
then spoke she with wrath

‚ouwî, kunech verlorne,
‚alas, king lost,

herzelôser Latîn,
heartless Latinus,

nû soldest dû tôt sîn,
now shouldst thou dead be,

hete dirs got gegunnen,
had to-thee-it God granted,

want dû hâst begunnen,
for thou hast begun,

daz dir vil ubile sal ergân.
what to-thee very ill shall go.

wil dû an den Troiân
(if)-wilt thou to the Trojan

dîn rîche gerben,
thy realm bequeath,

sô mûzestû êr sterben.
so must-thou before die.

dû wilt im dîne tohter geben?
thou wilt to-him thy daughter give?

daz enmûzer nimmer geleben,
that must-he never live-to-see,

daz her sie gewinne!
that he her should-win!

dû bist ûzer sinne.‘
thou art out-of sense.‘

Sie sprach ‚mir is zoren:
She spoke ‚to-me is wrath:

daz dû den sin hâst verloren,
that thou the sense hast lost,

daz sal dir wol schînen.
that shall to-thee well appear.

woldest dû Lavînen
wouldst thou Lavinia

dem edelen Turnûse nemen,
from-the noble Turnus take,

daz mohte ubele gezemen.
that might ill befit.

wie ungerne ich daz sage,
how unwillingly I that say,

daz si immêr gelâge
that she ever should-lie

bî dem ungetrouwen man,
by the faithless man,

der nie landes teil gewan
who never of-land part won

alsô breit als ein schaft,
as broad as a shaft,

daz wâre ein unsâligiu schaft,
that were an unblessed creature,

diu ime ze teile worde.
which to-him as portion should-become.

im nis von geborde
to-him is from birth

solich êre niht geslaht.
such honor not inborn.

dû bist ubile bedaht.
thou art ill minded.

her was tumb der dir ez riet,
he was foolish who to-thee it counseled,

wandez enmohte wesen niet,
for-it might be not,

ob ez dir gienge an daz leben.
if it to-thee went on the life.

soldestû si sô hin geben,
shouldst-thou her so away give,

so gewunnestû schiere
so shouldst-win-thou quickly

drî eidem oder viere:
three sons-in-law or four:

ir is genûch an einen.
of-them is enough in one.

dû maht uns wol bescheinen
thou mayst us well show

bôsen willen âne nôt.
evil will without need.

si wâre mir lieber tôt
she were to-me liefer dead

unde ich selbe unde dû.
and I myself and thou.

wan bekennest dû dich nû?
why-not knowest thou thyself now?

soln die eide sîn verloren,
shall the oaths be lost,

die dîne man hânt gesworen
which thy men have sworn

Turnô deme herzogen?
to-Turnus the duke?

wiltû daz si sîn gelogen?
wilt-thou that they be lied?

daz is ime ummâre,
that is to-him indifferent,

ob ez alsô wâre,
if it so were,

daz du drumbe soldest sterben
that thou therefore shouldst die

dune maht in niht enterben
thou mayst him not disinherit

der borge noch des rîches.
of-the castles nor of-the realm.

daz dû sô lîhte entwîches
that thou so lightly yieldest

unrehteme gemûte,
to-wrong spirit,

daz nis nehein gûte.‘
that is no good.‘

The Queen and Turnus

XX

The queen calls Aeneas a coward who fled Troy and deserted his lord and his men, and warns he will deceive Lavinia as he did Dido. Latinus answers that the gods have given Lavinia to Aeneas and that oaths to Turnus cannot stand. She writes to Turnus in her own hand by her chamberlain, urging him to drive the Trojan out and promising help. Turnus rages that Latinus would break his oath for a fugitive who lost his own land. He swears to fight and sends letters throughout the land, and a vast host gathers.

Aber sprach diu kuneginne
Again spoke the queen

,ez kumet von unsinne,
,it comes from madness,

daz dû kêrest an den man,
that thou turnest to the man,

der ûzer Troie entran
who out-of Troy escaped

sînem hêren und sînen knehten,
from-his lord and from-his knights,

wander niht getorste vehten.
for-he not dared fight.

her entran sînen mâgen,
he escaped from-his kinsmen,

die dâ erslagen lâgen:
who there slain lay:

fliehende schiet her dannen
fleeing parted he thence

mit den sînen mannen,
with the his men,

der her genûch vant.
of-whom he enough found.

her quam ze Lybiâ in daz lant
he came to Libya into the land

unde zû Kartâgô.
and to Carthage.

des hât diu frouwe Dîdô
for-that has the lady Dido

engolden vile sêre,
paid very sorely,

daz si im gût und êre
that she to-him good and honor

zû vil tete unde erbôt.
too much did and offered.

dorch sînen willen liget si tôt.
for his will lies she dead.

daz is im unmâre.
that is to-him indifferent.

des ich sicher wâre,
of-that I certain were,

ob ez dar zû quâme
if it there to should-come

daz her mîn tohter nâme,
that he my daughter should-take,

swenner sie gevienge
whenever-he her should-catch

und sîn wille ergienge,
and his will should-happen,

sô tâte ir der Troiân,
so would-do to-her the Trojan,

alser der hât getân,
as-he to-her has done,

diu dorch in liget tôt.
who for him lies dead.

ime is nû genâden nôt:
to-him is now of-grace need:

her nâmes, woldes dû sim geben.
he would-take-her, wouldst thou her-to-him give.

dû mohtest aber wol geleben,
thou mightst but well live-to-see,

daz her unsich betroge
that he us should-deceive

unde dîner tohter loge
and to-thy daughter should-lie

swaz sô her ir gehieze
whatever so he to-her should-promise

und uns die tohter lieze
and to-us the daughter should-leave

geben swem wir wolden.
to-give to-whom we would.

wie wâre danne vergolden
how were then repaid

ir êre unde ir magetûm?
her honor and her maidenhood?

hern lieze ez dorch den rîchtûm
he-not would-leave it for the riches

und dorch die borge und dorch daz lant:
and for the castles and for the land:

unser tohter lieze her zehant,
our daughter would-leave he at-once,

hern blibe dorch daz gût hie.
unless-he should-remain for the goods here.

an Troiâren vant man nie
in Trojans found one never

êre noch trouwe.
honor nor faith.

des hân ich grôze rouwe,
of-that have I great rue,

daz dû ze ime kêrest
that thou to him turnest

und in sô vaste êrest.‘
and him so firmly honorest.‘

Dô sprach gezogenlîche
Then spoke courteously

Latînûs der rîche
Latinus the rich

zû der kuneginne
to the queen

‚waz wânet ir gewinnen
‚what ween you to-win

mit der rede die ir tût?
with the speech which you make?

war zû is der zoren gût?
where to is the wrath good?

wânet ir michs bedwingen
ween you me-of-it to-force

mit ubellîchen dingen
with evil things

des dâ wesen niene mach?
what there be not-at-all may?

ich weiz ez wole manegen tach,
I know it well many-a day,

swie lieb sô ez mir wâre,
however dear so it to-me were,

daz Turnûs der mâre
that Turnus the famous

mîn tohter nimmer gwunne.
my daughter never should-win.

swer sô ime ir gunne,
whoever so to-him her should-grant,

swaz sô man es tû,
whatever so one of-it do,

her kumet nimmer dar zû,
he comes never there to,

daz si iemer werde sîn wîb,
that she ever become his woman,

ob wir alle unsern lîb
if we all our body

dar umbe solden lâzen.
there about should leave.

ir zornet zunmâzen,
you rage beyond-measure,

ez is ein ungefûge zorn:
it is an unseemly wrath:

ir habet mêr der mite verlorn
you have more there with lost

denne ir habet gewunnen.
than you have won.

daz irs habet begunnen,
that you-it have begun,

ir habet vil ubele getân.
you have very ill done.

waz wîzet ir dem Troiân,
what reproach you the Trojan,

einem vil edelen man,
a very noble man,

der û wole gûtes gan
who to-you well good grants

und û nie ubele gesprach?
and to-you never ill spoke?

nû habet ir ûwern ungemach
now have you your discomfort

ubele dar mite gebûzt.
badly there with remedied.

ich weiz wol, daz her haben mûz
I know well, that he have must

unser tohter ze wîbe.
our daughter as woman.

daz si Turnô blîbe,
that she to-Turnus should-remain,

des ne habe ich neheinen wân;
of-that — have I no expectation;

swaz sô dermit is getân
whatever so there-with is done

gesichert unde gesworen,
pledged and sworn,

daz mûz allez sîn verloren.‘
that must all be lost.‘

Dô sprach aber Latîn
Then spoke again Latinus

‚desn mach ander rât sîn,
‚of-that-not may other counsel be,

swaz sô man dar wider tû,
whatever so one there against do,

sô nis niht sô gût zû
so is naught so good to-it

alsô gût gedolt.
as good patience.

daz was betalle ûwer scholt,
that was wholly your fault,

ob ich sie Turnô geswûr.
if I her to-Turnus swore.

ich weste wol deich missefûr,
I knew well that-I misfared,

wande ich hetez wol vernomen,
for I had-it well heard,

daz ez niht mohte vollekomen,
that it not might come-to-pass,

wande ez was mir enboten
for it was to-me announced

und gewîssaget von den goten
and foretold by the gods

unde sagetez û vor wâr,
and told-it to-you for true,

ichn weiz uber wie manech jâr,
I-not know over how many-a year,

daz ez alsô mûste wesen.
that it so must be.

done liezet ir mich niht genesen
then let you me not recover

noch mit genâden leben.
nor with grace live.

dem si die gote hânt gegeben,
to-whom her the gods have given,

dem wil ich sie lâzen.
to-him will I her leave.

woldet ir ûch mâzen
would you yourself restrain

solher unzuhte,
from-such unbreeding,

ob ez ûch gût dûhte,
if it to-you good seemed,

ez dûhte mich gût,
it seemed to-me good,

wandez is bôse daz irz tût.
for-it is wicked that you-it do.

ir habet ze grôze undolt.
you have too great impatience.

ich wil es wesen âne scholt,
I will of-it be without fault,

ob irs ein teil engeldet,
if you-of-it a part pay,

daz ir einen helt scheldet,
that you a hero revile,
der is geboren von den goten,
who is born of the gods,
die daz allez hânt geboten.
who that all have commanded.
unde enscheldet in sô niht,
and revile him so not,
ob her û ze lobene geschiht,
if he to-you to praise happens,
daz irs ûch iht berouwet.
that you-it yourself at-all rue.
des ir mir niht getrouwet,
what you me not trust,
daz is doch diu wârheit.
that is yet the truth.
waz touch ûwer fravelheit?
what avails your rashness?
ir sît ein teil ze freissam.‘
you are a part too fearsome.‘
dô diu frouwe daz vernam,
when the lady that heard,
daz herz alsô meinde,
that he-it so meant,
dô clagete sie und weinde,
then lamented she and wept,
ir undolt was vile grôz.
her impatience was very great.
dô es den kunich bedrôz,
when it the king irked,

von zorne gienk her dannen
from wrath went he thence

hin ze sînen mannen
thither to his men

ûz der kemenâten.
out-of the chamber.

her was des wol berâten,
he was of-it well advised,

daz her si lâzen solde
that he her let should

sprechen swaz si wolde.
speak whatever she would.

Dô diu kuniginne
When the queen

mit solhem unsinne
with such madness

ir hende lange geslûch
her hands long beat

und geweinde genûch,
and wept enough,

ê danne sie sich ûf gerihte,
ere than she herself up raised,

einen brief sie selbe tihte,
a letter she herself composed,

den si mit schônen worden vant,
which she with fair words found,

und screib in mit ir selber hant.
and wrote it with her own hand.

den sande sie dâ Turnus was,
it sent she where Turnus was,

der den brief selbe las.
who the letter himself read.

deme hêren sie enbôt
to-the lord she sent-word

als ez ir was nôt,
as it to-her was need,

alsô sie ez hete vernomen
as she it had heard

unde wie ez dar was komen
and how it there was come

daz vil leide mâre.
the very loathsome tidings.

bî ir kamerâre
by her chamberlain

sande ime diu frowe den brief.
sent to-him the lady the letter.

diu rede enwas im niht lief.
the speech was to-him not dear.

dô her betalle las
when he wholly read

daz an dem brieve gescriben was,
what in the letter written was,

dô zornde Turnûs,
then raged Turnus,

daz im der kunech Latînûs,
that from-him the king Latinus,

umbe sô getâne scholde
for such made guilt

sîne tohter nemen wolde
his daughter take would

und sîn kunichrîche.
and his kingdom.

doch markterz buntlîche,
yet marked-he-it secretly,

wand des was im vile nôt,
for of-it was to-him very need,

dô im diu kuneginne enbôt,
when to-him the queen sent-word,

daz herz alsô ane vienge,
that he-it so at should-begin,

daz ez ime wole ergienge,
that it to-him well should-happen,

alsez ime gezâme,
as-it to-him should-befit,

daz her des war nâme,
that he of-it heed should-take,

daz her den Troiâre vertribe,
that he the Trojan should-drive-out,

daz ir neheiner dâ belibe,
that of-them none there should-remain,

wandez wâre schande,
for-it were disgrace,

der ûzer fremedem lande
who out-of foreign land

dar vertriben quâme,
thither driven should-come,

daz herm sîn wîb nâme
that he-from-him his woman should-take

und sîne borge und sîn lant,
and his castles and his land,

dâ hern geerbet ane vant,
which he-not inherited on found,

und ein unêre.
and a dishonor.

ouch enbôt sim mêre,
also sent-word she-to-him more,

her solde sich versinnen
he should himself bethink

und trôst nemen zir minnen
and comfort take to-her love

unde zû Lavînen,
and to Lavinia,

daz̨ her daz̨ lieze schînen,
that he that should-let appear,

wie lieb sime wâre,
how dear she-to-him were,

daz̨ her den Troiâre
that he the Trojan

ûz̨ dem lande verstieze.
out-of the land should-thrust.

daz̨ her des niene lieze,
that he of-it not-at-all should-leave,

dâ wolde sime helfen zû
there would she-to-him help to

beidiu spâte unde frû
both late and early

mit allen ir sinnen,
with all her wits,

mit schatze und mit minnen,
with treasure and with love,

mit silber und mit golde
with silver and with gold

swenne sô her wolde.
whenever so he would.

Turnûs hete grôzen zoren.
Turnus had great wrath.

her sprach ‚daz̨ mir hât gesworen
he spoke ‚what to-me has sworn

der kunich unde sîne man,
the king and his men,

daz hân ich gerne ob her mirs gan.
that have I gladly if he to-me-it grants.

sîn tohter und sîn rîche
his daughter and his realm

dazne mach mir lîhtechlîche
that may from-me lightly

niht werden benomen.
not become taken.

ich bin sô rehte dar an komen,
I am so rightly there on come,

ichne wil sîn niht verkiesen.
I will of-it not renounce.

ouch enmach ichs niht verliesen
also may I-it not lose

die wîle ich hân mîn leben.
the while I have my life.

her hât mir gîsel gegeben,
he has to-me hostages given,

sîne man, die ich kôs.
his men, whom I chose.

wil her werden trouwelôs
(if)-will he become faithless

unde meineide,
and forsworn,

ich wil der wârheide
I will of-the truth

an mîne gîsel jehen,
on my hostages declare,

diez gehôrt hânt unde gesehen,
who-it heard have and seen,

gûter lûte sô vil,
of-good people so many,

daz̨ her nû bôslîche wil
that he now wickedly will

und unhêrlîche werben.
and unlordly strive.

ich wolde ê ersterben
I would rather die

unde den lîb verliesen
and the body lose

unde wolde ê kiesen,
and would rather choose,

daz̨ ich mit êren tôt belibe,
that I with honor dead should-remain,

ê danne mich vertribe
ere than me should-drive-out

ein ellende man,
an exiled man,

der ûz̨er Troie entran.‘
who out-of Troy escaped.‘

Turnûs sprach aber mêre
Turnus spoke again more

‚ez̨ mûget mich vil sêre
‚it grieves me very sorely

daz̨ ichz̨ gesagen niene kan
that I-it tell not-at-all can

umbe den entrunnen man,
about the escaped man,

der ze Troie wart sigilôs
who at Troy became victoryless

und mit schanden verlôs
and with disgrace lost

sîn wîb unde sîn lant.
his woman and his land.

waz her dâ brôder lûte vant
what he there of-frail people found

âne herze unde âne were
without heart and without defense

mit den entran her uber mere.
with them escaped he over sea.

wes wil her hie beginnen?
what will he here begin?

wânt her hie lant gewinnen? 4440
weens he here land to-win?

des sal im ubele zouwen.
of-that shall to-him ill speed.

diz lant mit dirre frouwen
this land with this lady

ez wirt ime vil ungereit.
it becomes to-him very unready.

ez is ein michel tôrheit,
it is a great folly,

daz her sô kintlîchen vert. 4445
that he so childishly fares.

heter sîn eigen lant gewert,
had-he his own land defended,

danner mit schanden wart vertriben,
than-he with disgrace was driven-out,

wârer mit êren dâ beliben,
were-he with honor there remained,

sô heter manlîche getân.
so had-he manfully done.

swenne sô mir ein Troiân 4450
whenever so from-me a Trojan

nâme lant unde wîb,
should-take land and woman,

sô ne tohte mir mîn lîb,
so not should-avail to-me my body,

sô wâre ich des wole wert,
so were I of-it well worthy,

daz man mir schilt unde swert
that one from-me shield and sword

nâme und al mîn êre
should-take and all my honor

und daz ich nimmer mêre
and that I never more

wider fromen man gesprâche,
against valiant man should-speak,

ob her an mir râche
if he on me should-avenge

daz im die Kriechen tâten.
what to-him the Greeks did.

her is ubile berâten
he is ill counseled

und vil ubile bedaht:
and very ill minded:

der in dar an hât braht,
who him there to has brought,

der hât im ubile mite gevaren.
he has to-him ill with fared.

hern mach sich des niht bewaren,
he may himself of-it not guard,

hern mûze mir rûmen daz lant,
unless-he must to-me yield the land,

oder her lâzet mir ein phant:
or he leaves to-me a pledge:

sînen aller liebsten lîb.
his of-all dearest body.

ich wil mîn lant und mîn wîb
I will my land and my woman

wol vor ime behalden,
well before him keep,

sal es gelucke walden.‘
(if)-shall of-it luck rule.‘

Dô sprach aber Turnûs
Then spoke again Turnus

‚daz mich der kunech Latînûs
‚that me the king Latinus

alsus wil betriegen
thus will deceive

unde mir erliegen
and to-me belie

den eit den her mir swûr,
the oath which he to-me swore,

sone weiz ich wes her erre fûr,
so-not know I of-what he astray fared,

daz herz ie gelobete.
that he-it ever pledged.

ichn weiz ob er tobete,
I-not know whether he raved,

dô her sich es underwant.
when he himself of-it undertook.

ich hân die borge und daz lant
I have the castles and the land

alle in mînem eide.
all in my oath.

ê ich dâ von scheide,
ere I there from part,

ez wirt ê lange bestriten.
it becomes before long contested.

her hât ze lange gebiten,
he has too long waited,

ob er mir ez nemen wil.
if he from-me it take will.

ich hân frunde sô vil,
I have friends so many,

manne unde mâge,
men and kinsmen,

daz ich wol gelâge
that I well should-lay-low

den bôsen Troiânen,
the wicked Trojans,

die mich wânent ânen
who me ween to-bereave

wîbes unde êren.
of-woman and honors.

si mûzen hinnen kêren,
they must hence turn,

sie sint ubile here komen:
they are ill hither come:

mirn werde mîn lîb benomen
unless-from-me become my body taken

in vil korzen zîten,
in very short times,

ich wil mit in strîten
I will with them fight

sô daz sis schande gewinnen.
so that they-of-it disgrace win.

des wil ich beginnen
of-that will I begin

schiere ernestlîche.
quickly earnestly.

si soln in diseme rîche
they shall in this realm

vil ubile gedîen.
very ill thrive.

ich ergetze sie ir frîen
I repay them their wooing

mit leide und mit rouwen,
with sorrow and with rue,

des solt ir mir getrouwen,
of-that shall you me trust,

als mir ze mûte gestêt,
as to-me in mind stands,

daz ez in niemer ergêt
that it to-them never goes

ze deheinem lieve.‘
to any pleasure.‘

dô hiez er scrîben brieve.
then bade he write letters.

vil wîten her die sande
very widely he them sent

mit boten after lande
with messengers throughout land

dâ sîne frunt wâren.
where his friends were.

den hiez er enbâren
to-them bade he declare

unde in klagen sîne nôt.
and to-them lament his distress.

scône rede her in enbôt
fair speech he to-them sent-word

mit gefûgen worden.
with fitting words.

unde als ez gehôrden
and as it heard

sîne mâge und sîne man,
his kinsmen and his men,

michel here her gewan
great host he won

unde grôzẹ mankraft,
and great man-power,

daz si was unzalehaft.
that it was numberless.

Ascanius and the Tame Stag

XXI

While Turnus's allies gather, Aeneas strengthens Alba. Ascanius rides hunting and shoots a tame stag that Silvia, daughter of Tyrrheus, had reared, which ran home and fell dead. Tyrrheus's sons arm, kill one of Ascanius's men, and Ascanius shoots the elder son through the throat. Aeneas sends three hundred knights to rescue the boy, who holds a rock with his men; the Trojans rout the burghers, storm Tyrrheus's stronghold, burn it, and carry off the venison.

Turnûs der edile man
Turnus the noble man

4520 michel here her gewan.
great host he won.

ez was aber lanksâme,
it was but slow,

êr ez ze samene quâme,
ere it to gathering should-come,

die risen- und diu hêrschaft.
the levies and the lordship.

dar quam diu mâre ritterschaft,
thither came the famous knighthood,

4525 die her besande
whom he summoned

wîten after lande.
widely throughout land.

dô si zû zim quâmen
when they to him came

und sîne rede vernâmen,
and his speech heard,

wand sim wol gûtes gunden,
for they-to-him well good granted,

in den selben stunden
in the same hours

daz si sich gereiten
that they themselves readied

und des tages beiten,
and for-the day waited,

der in enboten was,
which to-them announced was,

die wîle bûwete Ênêas
the while built Aeneas

sîne borch Albâne
his castle Alba

und sîne Troiâne,
and his Trojans,

wander hete wol vernomen,
for-he had well heard,

daz Turnûs dar wolde komen
that Turnus thither would come

mit vil grôzeme here.
with very great host.

dâ wider schûf er sîne were
there against made he his defenses

so er aller beste mohte getûn.
as he of-all best might do.

dô solde Ascânjûs sîn sun
then should Ascanius his son

eins tages birsen rîten.
one day hunting ride.

zû den selben zîten,
at the same times,
dô her daz urloub gewan,
when he the leave won,
dô nam her sîne weideman,
then took he his huntsmen,
den der walt kunt was.
to-whom the forest known was.
dar zû gab im Ênêas
there to gave to-him Aeneas
zweinzich jungelinge
twenty younglings
willich zû dem dinge,
willing for the thing,
biderbe unde wol gezogen.
worthy and well bred.
si fûrden kocher unde bogen
they carried quivers and bows
und vil scharphe strâlen
and very sharp arrows
und swert mit schônen mâlen
and swords with fair marks
und braken vile gûte.
and brachets very good.
ir rocke unde hûte
their coats and hats
wâren grâ schâfvare,
were gray sheep-colored,
die wîsten sie dare
those guided them thither
die den wech kunden,
who the way knew,
aldâ si wilt funden.
where they game found.

Nû hôret wie der jungelink
Now hear how the youngling

Ascânjûs sîn dink
Ascanius his thing

an dem spile ane vienk
at the sport on began

und wâ daz birsen ergienk
and where the hunting happened

und welch wiltbrât her gewan.
and what venison he won.

dâ bî wonde ein edil man,
there by dwelt a noble man,

der was geheizen Tyrrêûs.
who was called Tyrrheus.

her hete ein vestez hûs
he had a firm house

in der gegene dâ bî
in the region there by

und hiez diu veste Tyrrêî,
and was-called the stronghold Tyrrhei,

[und stunt] bî Laurente in dem walt.
[*and stood*] *by Laurentum in the forest.*

der selbe hêre der was alt
the same lord he was old

und swach an sînem lîbe.
and weak in his body.

her hete bî sînem wîbe
he had by his woman

zwêne sune hêrlîche.
two sons lordly.

al ne wâren sie niht rîche,
though — were they not rich,

si wârn vil gûte knehte
they were very good knights

von edelem geslehte,
of noble lineage,

stark unde schône,
strong and fair,

wîse und kône,
wise and bold,

ob uns Virgiljûs niht enlouch.
if to-us Virgil not lied.

eine tohter heter ouch,
a daughter had-he also,

eine maget wol getâne,
a maiden well made,

geheizen Silvîâne.
called Silvia.

Vernemet diz vor ungelogen:
Hear this for unlied:

diu maget het einen hirz gezogen,
the maiden had a stag reared,

der was vile wole zam,
which was very well tame,

schône unde lussam,
fair and lovely,

grôz unde wol gehorn.
great and well horned.

dar abe quam vil michel zorn.
there from came very great wrath.

her was wol zehen jâr alt.
it was well ten years old.

under wîlen gienk her in den walt
at times went it into the forest

weiden mit deme wilde
to-graze with the game

des tages ûz an daz gevilde
in-the day out onto the field

und zâbent wider in daz hûs.
and at-evening back into the house.

und als der hêre Tyrrêûs
and when the lord Tyrrheus

obe sîme tische saz,
at his table sat,

der hirz diende im alser az.
the stag served to-him as-he ate.

uber sîn houbet vorne
over its head in-front

kleibte man im an sîn horne
stuck one to-it on its horn

kerzen die branden,
candles which burned,

die sînen site erkanden,
those-who its custom knew,

wande man der vone gesach.
for one there from saw.

ich sage û wes her mêre phlach,
I tell to-you of-what it more took-care,

des im der hêre weste dank:
for-which to-it the lord knew thanks:

her rihte sich ûf sô her trank;
it raised itself up when he drank;

her was gelêret den site.
it was taught the custom.

dâ was dem hêren wole mite
there was to-the lord well with

und diu junkfrowe was es frô.
and the maiden was of-it glad.

des selben tages quam ez sô
the same day came it so

(daz was sîn unsâlicheit),
(that was its misfortune),

dô Ascânjûs birsen reit,
when Ascanius hunting rode,

als ir dâ vor habet vernomen,
as you there before have heard,

dô was der hirz hin ûz komen
then was the stag thither out come

ze anderen tieren
to other beasts

mit wilden hirzen vieren
with wild stags four

eines morgenes frû.
one morning early.

dô reit Ascânjûs dar zû
then rode Ascanius there to

mit sînen weidegesellen.
with his hunting-comrades.

die bogen hiezer stellen
the bows bade-he set

dâ si daz wilt funden.
where they the game found.

die dâ schiezen kunden,
those-who there shoot could,

die giengen zû den boumen stân.
they went to the trees to-stand.

Ascânjûs der Troiân
Ascanius the Trojan

bî eime boume er stênde bleib
by a tree he standing remained

und schûf daz man daz wilt treib.
and made that one the game drove.

Dô wart daz wilt sô getriben
Then was the game so driven

dâ Ascânjûs was beliben
where Ascanius was remained

an eime boume gestân.
at a tree standing.

dô quam zû ime gegân
then came to him walking

der hirz der dâ was zam.
the stag which there was tame.

und alser im sô nahen quam,
and as-it to-him so near came,

daz in selben dohte,
that him himself seemed,

daz hern schiezen mohte,
that he-it shoot might,

dô râmder im der sîten.
then aimed-he to-it at-the side.

daz wilt daz schiet sich wîten,
the game that parted itself widely,

daz dâ freislîchen flôch.
which there fearsomely fled.

den bogen her manlîchen zôch.
the bow he manfully drew.

der zame hirz der was grôz.
the tame stag it was great.

dorch den lîb her in schôz
through the body he it shot

ein wênich hinder den bûch,
a little behind the belly,

daz her die strâlen dannoch trûch.
that it the arrow still bore.

daz blût starke ûz flôz,
the blood strongly out flowed,

want diu wunde diu was grôz.
for the wound it was great.

dô her den hirz hete gewunt,
when he the stag had wounded,

die braken liez er sâ zestunt
the brachets let he at-once at-the-hour

unde schuftes an die vart.
and set-them on the track.

michel froude dâ wart
great joy there became

unde spil harde gût,
and sport very good,

dô si bestunken daz blût,
when they smelled the blood,

dâ ez viel an daz gras.
where it fell on the grass.

der hirz der dâ wunt was,
the stag which there wounded was,

dô her der wunden entsûb,
when it of-the wound felt,

balde her sich dannen hûb
quickly it itself thence raised

zû der vesten hin wider
to the stronghold thither back

und viel tôter dernider,
and fell dead down,

daz her dar in niht volle quam.
that it there in not fully came.

dô der wirt daz vernam
when the host that heard

und sîn tohter diu maget,
and his daughter the maiden,

dô wart dâ vil geklaget.
then was there much lamented.

die sune ez ouch vernâmen.
the sons it also heard.

do si alle dar quâmen
when they all thither came

und si in tôten vunden
and they it dead found

und si ûz der wunden
and they out-of the wound

daz blût diezen sâgen
the blood gush saw

und si wolden frâgen,
and they would ask,

wer daz mohte hân getân,
who that might have done,

dô quam der junge Troiân
then came the young Trojan

Ascânjûs dar zû gerant.
Ascanius there to running.

bî dem hirze her si vant
by the stag he them found

die unkundige diet.
the unknown folk.

sin vernam sîner rede niet,
they understood his speech not,

ir rede her ouch niht vernam.
their speech he also not understood.

hern weste niht daz her was zam,
he knew not that it was tame,
ouch enkonder sie niht frâgen.
also could-he them not ask.
dô si in komen sâgen,
when they him come saw,
der in den hirz hete erslagen,
who to-them the stag had slain,
unde sie in hôrden jagen
and they him heard hunt
frôlîche mit dem horn,
joyfully with the horn,
dô was in allen zorn.
then was to-them all wrath.
in daz hûs si wider giengen,
into the house they back went,
ir wâfen sie geviengen,
their weapons they seized,
swert schilt unde spere.
sword shield and spear.
si heten michile gere,
they had great desire,
daz si in ze tôde slûgen.
that they him to death should-strike.
ê si im ihtes zû gewûgen,
ere they to-him aught to should-mention,
do bestunden sin mit unfrede,
then attacked they-him with unpeace,
ê sim gesageten die rede,
ere they-to-him should-tell the speech,
war umbe sie ez heten getân.
where fore they it had done.

dô wart ein sîn Troiân
then was one his Trojan

dorch den lîb geschoꝛzen.
through the body shot.

daꝛ het hers genoꝛzen,
that had he-of-it enjoyed,

daꝛ her dâ tôt lach.
that he there dead lay.

dô daꝛ Ascânjûs gesach,
when that Ascanius saw,

daꝛ man sîne lûte slûch,
that one his people struck,

dô wart her zornich genûch.
then became he wrathful enough.

Dô misseviel im daꝛ dink.
Then displeased to-him the thing.

her was ein snel jungelink,
he was a swift youngling,

den bogen heter gespannen.
the bow had-he drawn.

her sprach ze sînen mannen,
he spoke to his men,

ob si ime helfen wolden,
if they to-him help would,

der tôte worde vergolden,
the dead-one should-become repaid,

ê danner quâme dane.
ere than-he should-come away.

ein scharphe strâlen sazter ane
a sharp arrow set-he on

und rach sînen weidegenôz:
and avenged his hunting-fellow:

Tyrrêûses sun her erschôz,
Tyrrheus's son he shot,

der der eldiste was,
who the eldest was,

daz̨ her mêre niht genas
that he more not survived

noch nimmer mêre wort gesprach.
nor ever more word spoke.

die giezâdern her im brach,
the jugular he to-him broke,

daz̨ her tôt viel an den graben.
that he dead fell into the ditch.

dâ quam michel leit abe.
there came great sorrow from.

Dô des der brûder wart gewar,
When of-it the brother became aware,

manlîche rander dar
manfully ran-he thither

zû dem hêren Ascâne
to the lord Ascanius

und râmde sîn ze slâne
and aimed of-him to strike

an daz̨ houbet mit dem swerde,
on the head with the sword,

niwan daz̨ in ernerde,
except that him saved,

daz̨ her wol geriten was:
that he well mounted was:

daz̨ half im daz̨ her genas
that helped to-him that he survived

unde dannen quam gesunt,
and thence came healthy,

wande jener ze fûz̨en stunt,
for that-one on foot stood,

hern mohte in niht erspringen.
he might him not overtake.

diu ros hiezer bringen
the horses bade-he bring

im und sînen mannen
to-him and to-his men

und kêrden sâ dannen
and turned at-once thence

die fremeden birsâre.
the strange hunters.

und als die borgâre
and as the burghers

ûf diu ros quâmen,
onto the horses came,

ir schilde sie dô nâmen
their shields they then took

unde ir spere unde ir bogen.
and their spears and their bows.

dô wâren jene vor gezogen,
then were those before drawn,

die in den frunt heten benomen,
who from-them the friend had taken,

und wâren ûf ein vels komen.
and were onto a rock come.

aldar volgeten sie in nâ
thither followed they them after

und jene erwereten sich dâ,
and those defended themselves there,

wand Ascânjûs gesande
for Ascanius sent

einen boten von dem lande
a messenger from the land

ze sîme vater dâ her was.
to his father where he was.

dô clagete hêre Ênêas,
then lamented lord Aeneas,

daz her in dâ hin rîten liez.
that he him there thither ride let.

driu hundert ritter her hiez
three hundred knights he bade

dâ hine varen balde
there thither fare quickly

mit gewâfine ze walde
with weapons to forest

und hiez si balde rîten.
and bade them quickly ride.

in den selben zîten
in the same times

wâren sie vil nâch tôt.
were they very nearly dead.

si liden angest unde nôt,
they suffered fear and distress,

daz si den lîb ernereten:
that they the body saved:

idoch si sich erwereten,
yet they themselves defended,

wande in diu helfe quam,
for to-them the help came,

driu hundert ritter lussam,
three hundred knights lovely,

ein wol gewâfenete schar.
a well armed troop.

dô si ir worden gewar,
when they of-them became aware,

dô worden sie vile frô
then became they very glad

da si ûf dem steine stunden hô;
where they on the stone stood high;

lieb was in daz mâre.
dear was to-them the tidings.

aber die borgâre
but the burghers

und die von deme lande
and those of the land

die liezen die schande
they let the disgrace

und den schaden hine gân
and the harm away go

und allez daz in was getân,
and all that to-them was done,

die kêrden alle dannen,
they turned all thence,

der hêre mit den mannen,
the lord with the men,

si flohen vile balde
they fled very quickly

sumelîche ze walde,
some to forest,

sumelîche in die borch wider,
some into the castle back,

und jene fûren hernider.
and those fared down.

swaz sô sie ir mohten ervaren,
whatever so they of-them might overtake,

irn genas nie dehein baren.
of-them survived never any bairn.

Dô triben sie die geste
Then drove they the strangers

wider in die veste,
back into the stronghold,

wan si heten unheil.
for they had misfortune.

ir lûte was ein michil teil
of-their people was a great part

4775 ûzerhalb der borch beliben,
outside the castle remained,

do di andern worden in triben
when the others were in driven

beidiu wunt unde erslagen.
both wounded and slain.

sumelîche liezen sich jagen
some let themselves chase

after walde her und dare.
throughout forest hither and thither.

4780 dô erbeizete diu schare
then dismounted the troop

vor die borch ze fûze.
before the castle on foot.

si heten gûte mûze.
they had good leisure.

dô hete Tyrrêûs
then had Tyrrheus

gerne erweret sîn hûs,
gladly defended his house,

4785 daz liez her vil wole schîn.
that let he very well seen.

desn mohte aber niht sîn,
of-that might but not be,

sîn helfe was ze kleine.
his help was too small.

si worfen grôze steine
they cast great stones

und schozzen vaste mit den bogen.
and shot fast with the bows.

die valporten heten si ûf gezogen
the portcullises had they up drawn

und giengen ze were stân.
and went to defense to-stand.

die geste hiezen si abe gân,
the strangers bade they off go,

ob si den lîb wolden generen
if they the body would save

und si wânden sich erweren.
and they weened themselves to-defend.

daz̨n half aber niht ein bast,
that helped but not a bast,

want diu borch ne was niht vast,
for the castle — was not firm,

si giengen drin mit gewalt.
they went in with force.

der hêre Tyrrêûs engalt
the lord Tyrrheus paid

her ne weste selbe wes.
he not knew self for-what.

harde rouwich was her des,
very rueful was he of-it,

daz̨ her sînen sun het verloren
that he his son had lost

und die hêren ir zoren
and the lords their wrath

an im sô sêre râchen
on him so sorely avenged

und im sîn hûs brâchen,
and to-him his house broke,

daz̨ was ime ein ubil rât.
that was to-him an evil counsel.

si nâmen ir wilbrât,
they took their venison,

ze Albâne siz sanden,
to Alba they-it sent,

daz hûs sie verbranden.
the house they burned.

Turnus Accuses Aeneas

XXII

The Trojans plunder the land and stock Montalbane for nearly a year. Turnus brings Tyrrheus's wrong before Latinus and swears vengeance. Latinus answers that Aeneas was not there, grieved at the deed, drove out its counselors, and will offer atonement, and that he is in the king's peace, so whoever harms him wrongs the king. Turnus goes angrily to the queen, who promises counsel and treasure. His host gathers at Laurentum, a hundred and forty thousand strong, and the first allies arrive: Mezentius, Lausus, and Aventinus.

Dô diu veste was verbrant,
When the stronghold was burned,

dô fûren si uber al daz lant.
then fared they over all the land.

grôzen roub si nâmen,
great plunder they took,

und swaz si ane quâmen
and whatever they on came

daz was allez verloren,
that was all lost,

vihe fleisch unde koren,
cattle flesh and grain,

mele brôt unde wîn.
meal bread and wine.

si dahten daz si mûsten sîn
they thought that they must be

ze Albâne besezzen.
at Alba besieged.

die helide vermęzzen
the heroes bold

sazten sich zû der were,
set themselves to the defense,

wande sie mit here
for they with host

wole werben kunden.
well fare could.

si nâmen daz si funden
they took what they found

und allez daz in tohte
and all that to-them served

daz man gefûren mohte
what one carry might

getrîben unde getragen
drive and bear

unde leiten manegen wagen
and led many-a wagon

die stolzen Troiâne
the proud Trojans

ûf Montalbâne,
up Montalbane,

die alden zû den jungen.
the old with the young.

die gebûre sie bedwungen,
the peasants they constrained,

daz sin den wech wîsten.
that they-them the way showed.

ir borch sie dâ spîsten
their castle they there victualed

vil nâch zeime jâre,
very nearly for-a year,

swem ez leit wâre.
to-whom-ever it grievous were.

Dô daz mâre ûf quam
When the tidings up came

undez Turnûs vernam,
and-it Turnus heard,

dô was her des vil unfrô,
then was he of-it very unglad,

daz der Troiâr alsô
that the Trojan so

den edilen man hete erslagen.
the noble man had slain.

harde halferz ime klagen,
very helped-he-it to-him lament,

daz her daz hûs hete verbrant
that he the house had burned

und si uber allez lant
and they over all land

den roub heten genomen.
the plunder had taken.

her was ze Laurente komen
he was to Laurentum come

unde hâte gesant
and had sent

nâch den hêren in daz lant
after the lords into the land

und sagete in daz mâre
and told them the tidings

und nam die borgâre,
and took the burghers,

die ime mohten gefromen.
who to-him might avail.

die forsten heter ouch genomen
the princes had-he also taken

und manegen helt lussam,
and many-a hero lovely,

mit den her vor den kunich quam.
with whom he before the king came.

Den daz ubel was getân
Those-to-whom the evil was done

die hiez her bî ime stân.
them bade he by him stand.

vaste her ir rede sprach
firmly he their speech spoke

und clagete daz ungemach,
and lamented the discomfort,

daz im dâ getân was.
that to-him there done was.

her sprach ,daz hêre Ênêas
he spoke ,that lord Aeneas

sô wol hie wart enphangen,
so well here was received,

daz is ze leide ergangen
that is to sorrow gone

uns und unsern holden.
to-us and to-our liegemen.

des hât sêre engolden
for-that has sorely paid

der edile man Tyrrêûs,
the noble man Tyrrheus,

dem zebrochen is sîn hûs
to-whom broken is his house

und sîn sun dâ liget tôt.
and his son there lies dead.

des ne wâre dehein nôt,
of-that — were no need,

daz sis immer gedehten:
that they-it ever should-think:

sie hânt ime ir vehten
they have to-him their fighting

unsanfte bescheinet.
ungently shown.

ichn weiz waz daz meinet,
I-not know what that means,

daz ez der kunich wil verdolen.
that it the king will endure.

daz sî û allen unverholen,
that be to-you all unbidden,

ich ne wilz im niht vergeben:
I — will-it to-him not forgive:

sal ich behalden mîn leben,
(if)-shall I keep my life,

ez wirt ime zunminnen.
it becomes to-him to-unlove.

ichn woldes aber niht beginnen
I would-it but not begin

noch daz ubel mêren,
nor the evil increase,

ê danne ich mit û hêren
ere than I with you lords

den kunich hete gesprochen.
the king had spoken.

ez wirt alsô gerochen,
it becomes so avenged,

daz im nie dehein vart
that to-him never any journey

ze solhen schanden ne wart,
to such disgraces — became,

daz sie unser lant
that they our land

verheret hânt und verbrant
harried have and burned

und des mannes veste.
and the man's stronghold.

wir mohten solher geste
we might such guests

hie vile wole enberen.
here very well do-without.

ich wil in unser lant weren
I will to-them our land defend

sô daz siz rûmen mûzen.
so that they-it leave must.

ich gesetze sie ze bûzen,
I set them to penance,

daz si hie hânt missetân.
that they here have misdone.

man sal es in vaste widerstân,
one shall it to-them firmly withstand,

daz si unser lûte hânt erslagen.
that they our people have slain.

ich geschaffe dazs ouch mûzen clagen
I bring-about that-they also must lament

in vil korzen zîten.
in very short times.

swaz ich mir mach berîten,
whatever I to-myself may prepare,

ez wirt in ze rouwen.
it becomes to-them to rue.

solden si borge bouwen
should they castles build

mit gewalt in diseme lande,
with force in this land,

daz wâre ein michel schande.‘
that were a great disgrace.‘

Dô sprach der kunich Latîn
Then spoke the king Latinus

‚der rede mach lîhte gnûch sîn,
‚of-the speech may easily enough be,

daz lob is an den werken,
the praise is in the works,

derz rehte kan gemerken.
who-it rightly can mark.

ir sît ze verre drane komen,
you are too far thereon come,

wande ich hân daz wol vernomen,
for I have that well heard,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

selbe dâ niene was,
self there not-at-all was,

dâ daz ubel wart getân,
where the evil was done,

und weiz daz wole âne wân
and know that well without doubt

daz ez von ungelucke quam.
that it from misfortune came.

ez was im leit dô herz vernam,
it was to-him grievous when he-it heard,

her vertreib die ez gerieten,
he drove-out those-who it counseled,

ouch wil her gerne bieten
also will he gladly offer

êrhafte sûne. 4915
honorable atonement.

daz stêt im wol ze tûne,
that stands to-him well to do,

ouch sal herz niht lâzen.
also shall he-it not leave.

woldet ir ûch mâzen
would you yourselves restrain

umbe die rede eteswaz,
about the speech somewhat,

daz geviele mir baz. 4920
that should-please me better.

ichn mach û des gelouben niet,
I may to-you of-it believe not,

daz ir ûch die rede an ziet
that you yourselves the speech on draw

ze alsus grôzen schanden.
to so great disgraces.

jâ is û hûte entstanden
yea is to-you today arisen

manich jâr unde tach. 4925
many-a year and day.

swâ ez mit êren wesen mach,
where it with honor be may,

dâ râte ich daz manz gûte
there counsel I that one-it in-good

unde man des hûte,
and one of-it should-guard,

daz niht ubel dâ von quâme,
that naught evil there from should-come,

der ûch dar vone nâme,
he-who you there from should-take,

daz moht û ze staten komen.
that might to-you to stead come.

sine gerieten û niht ze fromen;
they counseled to-you not for profit;

die ûch diz sprechen hiezen.
those-who you this speak bade.

man lâzes den geniezen
one let-it him enjoy

deme ez ie leit was.
to-whom it ever grievous was.

ouch is der hêre Ênêas
also is the lord Aeneas

dorch genâde an uns komen:
for grace to us come:

ich hân in in mînen fride genomen
I have him into my peace taken

und sîn volk und sîn gût.
and his folk and his goods.

swer im iht leides tût,
whoever to-him aught of-sorrow does,

der hât wider mich getân
he has against me done

unde hât mich âne wân
and has me without doubt

al betalle verloren.‘
all wholly lost.‘

dô was dem hêren vil zoren
then was to-the lord much wrath

Turnô und vil ungemach,
to-Turnus and much discomfort,

daz Latînûs dise rede sprach.
that Latinus this speech spoke.

her clagetez sînen mannen
he lamented-it to-his men

und gienk mit zorne dannen
and went with wrath thence

unde mit unminne
and with unlove

hin ze der kuniginne.
thither to the queen.

Do er in die kemenâten gienk,
When he into the chamber went,

minnichlîche in enphienk
lovingly him received

diu kuniginne rîche.
the queen rich.

vil gezogenlîche
very courteously

gnâdete her ir dâ wider.
thanked he her there back.

si hiez in sitzen bî ir nider.
she bade him sit by her down.

dô her bî ir gesaz,
when he by her sat,

sîner rede niht vergaz
his speech not forgot

Turnûs der rîche
Turnus the rich

vil gewizzenlîche:
very knowingly:

her was ein edile forste.
he was a noble prince.

‚frouwe, ob ich getorste,
‚lady, if I dared,

ich wolde û von dem kunege clagen,
I would to-you of the king lament,

daz her daz laster wil vertragen,
that he the reproach will endure,

daz Ênêas der Troiân
that Aeneas the Trojan

im und û hât getân
to-him and to-you has done

unde uns andern allen.
and to-us others all.

wem mohte daz gevallen?
to-whom might that please?

her sprichet der wunderlîche zû.
he speaks there wondrously to.

swie bôslîche her tû,
however wickedly he do,

ichn wil ez weiz got niht verdolen.
I will it knows God not endure.

wande her hât mir bevolen
for he has to-me commended

sîn lant und sîn rîche.
his land and his realm.

swie her mir geswîche
however he from-me should-fall-away

und mîner wârheit niene giht,
and of-my faith not-at-all admits,

mîn herze geswîchet mir niht
my heart fails me not

und mîne frunt und mîne man.
and my friends and my men.

ich wil, ob mirs got gan,
I will, if to-me-it God grants,

die bôsen trôischen zagen
the wicked Trojan cowards

ûz̧er diseme lande jagen
out-of this land chase

hin wider uber mere
thither back over sea

mit michelme, here,
with great, host,

daz̧ ich schiere gewinne.‘
that I quickly should-win.‘

dô sprach diu kuniginne
then spoke the queen

‚Turnûs, lieber sun mîn,
‚Turnus, dear son mine,

des wil ich gewis sîn,
of-that will I certain be,

alsô dû spriches alsô tû,
as thou speakest so do,

dâ wil ich dir helfen zû
there will I thee help to

mit sinne und mit râte
with sense and with counsel

beidiu frû und spâte
both early and late

unde naht unde tach,
and night and day,

als ich kan unde mach,
as I can and may,

mit listen und mit fûgen.
with wiles and with fitness.

ich gibe dir schaz genûgen,
I give to-thee treasure enough,

den dû gerne nemen maht,
which thou gladly take mayst,
wande dû bist wol bedaht.
for thou art well minded.
dank habe der ez geriet,
thanks have he-who it counseled,
daz dû die trôischen diet
that thou the Trojan folk
betalle wil vertrîben.
wholly wilt drive-out.
liezest dû si blîben,
shouldst-let thou them remain,
ez wâre schande unde spot.‘
it were disgrace and mockery.‘
»frouwe, daz vergelde û got,«
»lady, that repay to-you God,«
sprach der helt lussam.
spoke the hero lovely.
urloub her dô nam
leave he then took
zû der kuneginne.
of the queen.
dô schieden si sich mit minne.
then parted they themselves with love.
Dô daz alsô getân was
When that so done was
und sich der hêre Ênêas
and himself the lord Aeneas
vaste sazte zû der were,
firmly set to the defense,
dô quam Turnûses here
then came Turnus's host
ze rosse und ze fûze,
on horse and on foot,

als wir ez sagen mûzen.
as we it say must.

des wart erweget al daz lant,
of-that became stirred all the land,

wander hete sich besant
for-he had himself summoned

verre unde wîten.
far and wide.

si quâmen in allen sîten
they came on all sides

ze Laurente zû gevaren
to Laurentum to fared

mit vil michelen scharen
with very great troops

daz lant ze berge und ze tale.
the land on hill and in dale.

des heres was ein grôze zale,
of-the host was a great number,

als ich ez an den bûchen las.
as I it in the books read.

hundert tûsent ir was
hundred thousand of-them was

und vierzich tûsent dar zô.
and forty thousand there to.

wol enphienk sie dô
well received them then

Turnûs der hêre.
Turnus the lord.

her bôt in michel êre,
he offered to-them great honor,

fruntlîche er sie beriet.
in-friendship he them provided.

ichn mach û die forsten niet
I may to-you the princes not

rehte genennen alle ensamen:
rightly name all together:

idoch weiz ich ein teil ir namen,
yet know I a part of-their names,

die dâ wâren aller hêrste.
who there were of-all lordliest.

Mezentiûs quam zaller êrste
Mezentius came at-all first

der leite ein hêrlîche schare,
who led a lordly troop,

tûsent ritter brahter dare
a-thousand knights brought-he thither

sîner frunt und sîner manne.
of-his friends and of-his men.

iedoch sô was verre dannen
yet so was far thence

sîn lant unde sîn hûs.
his land and his house.

dar nâch quam sîn sun Lausûs
there after came his son Lausus

zû deme tagedink,
to the assembly,

der schôniste jungelink,
the fairest youngling,

den der ieman gesach,
whom there anyone saw,

daz ich erzûgen wole mach
which I bear-witness well may

mit den diez bûch hânt gelesen:
with those who-the book have read:

hern mohte nimmer scôner wesen
he might never fairer be

von allem sînem lîbe.
in all his body.

von manne und von wîbe
of man and of woman

nie enwart schôner belde.
never became fairer image.

her fûrde sneller helde
he led of-swift heroes

mêr dan funfhundert.
more than five-hundred.

her hete sich gesundert
he had himself set-apart

von den anderen scharen.
from the other troops.

Aventînus quam nâch ime gevaren,
Aventinus came after him fared,

des hêren Hercules sun;
the lord Hercules's son;

her wolde ritterschaft dâ tûn.
he would knighthood there do.

Aventînus der mâre,
Aventinus the famous,

man saget uns daz her wâre
one tells to-us that he were

hobisch unde êrhaft
courtly and honorable

kûne unde wârhaft.
bold and truthful.

her was Turnô vile trût,
he was to-Turnus very dear,

unde het eins lêwen hût
and had a lion's hide
gemachet ze sîme schilde.
made to his shield.
der junge helt milde
the young hero generous
dorch die scholde phlach her des,
for the cause did he that,
daz sîn vater Hercules
that his father Hercules
einen lêwen erslûch
a lion slew
und anders wunders genûch,
and other wonder enough,
des weiz man wol die wârheit.
of-which knows one well the truth.
dem hêren was diu fromicheit
to-the lord was the valor
von sîme vater wol geslaht.
from his father well inborn.
tûsent ritter heter braht
a-thousand knights had-he brought
sunder schutzen und fûzhere.
besides archers and foot-host.
her wonde bî dem western mere.
he dwelt by the western sea.

Turnus's Allies, and Camilla

XXIII

More allies come to Turnus: the duke of Praeneste, the margrave of Pallante, Messapus with horses whose mothers conceive them from the wind, Clausus of the Sabines, and peoples from Naples to Venice and even Hungary, seven times twenty thousand. Last comes Camilla, maiden queen of the Volscians, whose beauty, knightly dress, and wondrous piebald palfrey are described at length. She does only knightly work, leads five hundred armed maidens, and keeps her maidenhood. Turnus then summons his princes to council in an orchard.

Nâch Aventîne dô quam
After Aventinus then came

ein hêre vile lussam,
a lord very lovely,

der herzoge von Prênestîne.
the duke of Praeneste.

ein michel menege was diu sîne:
a great company was the his:

tûsent ritter hêrlîche
a-thousand knights lordly

fûrde der herzoge rîche
led the duke rich

wol gewâfent und wol berâten,
well armed and well provided,

die scône ritterschaft tâten
who fair knightbood did

unde wole vehten kunden,
and well fight could,

dô si siches underwunden
when they themselves-of-it undertook

unde sich wol werden
and themselves well defended

mit speren und mit swerden.
with spears and with swords.

Dô quam ein hêre dar nâ,
Then came a lord there after,

der wole wart enphangen dâ,
who well was received there,

der margrâve von Pallante.
the margrave of Pallante.

tûsent ritter sunder sarjante
a-thousand knights besides sergeants

und hundert schutzen brahter dare
and hundred archers brought-he thither

ze storme harde wole gare.
for assault very well prepared.

Dar nâch quam Messâpûs,
There after came Messapus,

deme hete Neptûnûs
to-whom had Neptune

sîn vater tûsent ritter gesant
his father a-thousand knights sent

mit gewâfenter hant.
with armed hand.

her was kunich von dem mere.
he was king of the sea.

harde beschowete man sîn here,
hard beheld one his host,

dô her ze Laurente quam.
when he to Laurentum came.

ir ros wâren lussam,
their horses were lovely,

snel unde vile gût,
swift and very good,

von einer slahte stût,
of a kind of-stud,

diu dâ wont in deme mere.
which there dwells in the sea.

her und allez sîn here
he and all his host

heten solhe vârîs,
had such steeds,

sine lebeten aber neheine wîs
they lived but in-no way

langer danne vier jâr.
longer than four years.

daz welnt die wîsen vor wâr,
that hold the wise for true,

die ez von den bûchen sagent.
who it from the books tell.

die mûder die sie tragent
the mothers who them bear

die enphânt si von dem winde
they conceive them from the wind

an des meres ende,
at the sea's end,

daz is gnûgen unverholen.
that is to-many unbidden.

von den rossen und von den volen
of the horses and of the foals

ne kumet nimmer dehein fruht.
— comes never any offspring.

wâre ez niht unzuht,
were it not ill-breeding,

ich gedûtez wole baz:
I should-interpret-it well better:

nû lâze ich ez umbe daz;
now leave I it about that;

daz ich beschône dar mite.
that I gloss there with.

ez is ein unhovesch site,
it is an uncourtly custom,

daz man der zuhte niene gert.
that one of-the breeding not-at-all desires.

si wâren maneger marke wert,
they were of-many-a mark worth,

mohten si leben zehen jâr.
might they live ten years.

nû wizzen wir daz wol vor wâr,
now know we that well for true,

die wir diu bûch hân gelesen,
who we the books have read,

daz daz niht ne mach wesen.
that that not — may be.

Do quam Claudjûs der wol getâne,
Then came Clausus the well made,

her was hêre ze Sabîâne.
he was lord at Sabine-land.

dar nâch quâmen die Barbarîne,
there after came the Barbarines,

die Pulloise und die Latîne,
the Apulians and the Latins,

die von Nâplîs, von Salerne,
those of Naples, of Salerno,

von Calabrîe, von Volterne,
of Calabria, of Volturno,

die von Genuê, die Pîsâne,
those of Genoa, the Pisans,

die Ungere und die Veneziâne,
the Hungarians and the Venetians,

und dar zû manich rîche man,
and there to many-a rich man,

des ich genennen niene kan,
whom I name not-at-all can,

manich helt lussam.
many-a hero lovely.

umb daz here daz dâ quam
about the host which there came

is uns diu zale wole kunt:
is to-us the number well known:

sibenwarb zweinzich tûsunt
seven-times twenty thousand

was ez dô ez quam ze samen.
was it when it came to together.

sold ich diu lant und die namen
should I the lands and the names

zellen albesunder,
recount all-separately,

daz wâre ein michel wunder.
that were a great wonder.

Daz here daz was lussam,
The host that was lovely,

daz dem hêren Turnô quam:
which to-the lord Turnus came:

manech ritter gemeit,
many-a knight glad,

den her hete sîn leit
to-whom he had his sorrow

enboten unde geclaget.
sent-word and lamented.

ze jungist quam ein maget
at last came a maiden

dorch Turnûses willen,
for Turnus's will,

diu hiez frou Camille,
who was-called lady Camilla,
diu kunegîn von Volcâne,
the queen of Volscia,
ein maget wol getâne,
a maiden well made,
verwizzen unde reine.
blameless and pure.
sie was iemer eine
she was ever one
der schônisten juncfrouwen
of-the fairest maidens
die ieman mohte beschouwen
whom anyone might behold
an allem ir lîbe.
in all her body.
sie was zeinem wîbe
she was for-a woman
wol gewassen genûch,
well grown enough,
sô nie wîb mêr getrûch
as never woman more bore
schôner tohter dan si was.
fairer daughter than she was.
wîzgele was ir daz vas
white-yellow was to-her the hair
und diu scheitel vil gereht.
and the parting very straight.
daz vorhoubet was ir sleht,
the forehead was to-her smooth,
die ouchbrân brûn und niht breit,
the eyebrows brown and not broad,
gewassen âne arbeit.
grown without labor.

schône ougen und wol stânde,
fair eyes and well standing,

daz manech man des wânde,
that many-a man of-it weened,

daz si wâre ein gotinne.
that she were a goddess.

diu nase der munt daz kinne
the nose the mouth the chin

daz stunt sô minnechlîche,
that stood so lovely,

daz nieman wart sô rîche,
that no-one became so rich,

in geluste daz her sie gesâge,
unless-him pleased that he her should-see,

daz si an sînem arme lâge.
that she in his arm should-lie.

ir varewe lieht unde gût,
her color light and good,

rehte als milich unde blût,
right like milk and blood,

wol gemischet rôt und wîz,
well mixed red and white,

âne blank und ân vernîz
without blanch and without varnish

(desn was ir nehein nôt),
(of-that was to-her no need),

von natûre wîz und rôt.
by nature white and red.

scône ir arme unde hande,
fair her arms and hands,

wol gezieret mit gewande
well adorned with clothing

minnechlîch was ir lîb al,
lovely was her body all,

wol geschaffen unde smal
well shaped and slender

unde wîblîch genûch.
and womanly enough.

ir gewant al daz si trûch
her clothing all that she bore

daz stunt ir ritterlîche,
that stood to-her knightly,

wande sie was rîche
for she was rich

und mohtez wol gewinnen.
and might-it well win.

anderre kuniginne
of-other queens

gelîchete ir neheine.
resembled her none.

ir hemede daz was cleine
her shift it was fine

unde wîz alsam ein swane.
and white as a swan.

einen rôten borden trûch si ane,
a red braid bore she on,

gedwungen vaste umbe ir lîb.
laced fast about her body.

sie ne tet niht alse ein wîb,
she — did not as a woman,

si gebârde als ein jungelink
she bore-herself as a youngling

unde schûf selbe ir dink,
and arranged herself her thing,

als si ein ritter solde sîn.
as-if she a knight should be.

ir mantel der was harmîn,
her mantle it was of-ermine,

dar ûffe ein grûner samît,
there upon a green samite,

dâ si dô zû der zît
wherein she then at the time

inne gienk unde reit.
in went and rode.

der zobel was brûn unde breit,
the sable was brown and broad,

als uns daz bûch saget vor wâr.
as us the book tells for true.

mit einem borden was ir daz hâr
with a braid was to-her the hair

wol gewalkieret.
well wound.

si was gebalzieret
she was belted

als ein ritter lussam.
as a knight lovely.

irn mohte nieman wesen gram,
to-her might no-one be hostile,

der si rehte gesach.
who her rightly saw.

deheines werkes sie ne phlach,
of-no work she — took-care,

daz wîbes werk wâre.
that woman's work were.

ez was ir unmâre,
it was to-her indifferent,

man ne moht siz niht gelêren,
one — might her-it not teach,

sie ne wolde sich niht kêren
she — would herself not turn

niewan an ritterschaft.
except to knighthood.

grôz was ir geselleschaft,
great was her company,

die si hete braht dare:
which she had brought thither:

magede eine grôze schare,
maidens a great troop,

funf hundert junkfrouwen,
five hundred maidens,

die konden helme houwen
who could helmets hew

unde schilde stechen
and shields pierce

unde spere brechen
and spears break

unde justieren
and joust

unde wol pungieren,
and well charge,

die ir volgen mûzen
who her follow must

ze orse und ze fûzen,
on horse and on foot,

slahen mit den swerden
strike with the swords

mit den die des gerden.
with those who of-it desired.

Des plach frou Camille
That did lady Camilla

und daz was ir wille,
and that was her will,

daz si wâfene trûch,
that she weapons bore,

und was doch heimelîch genûch
and was yet familiar enough

mit den rittern allen tach.
with the knights all day.

ich sage û wes si nahtes plach:
I tell to-you of-what she at-night took-care:

dâr si herberge gewan
where she lodging won

dar ne mûste dehein man
there — must no man

neheine wîs nâher komen:
in-no way nearer come:

des wart gûte war genomen,
of-that was good heed taken,

daz sis nimmer vergaz.
that she-it never forgot.

diu frouwe tetez umbe daz,
the lady did-it about that,

dorch andern neheinen rûm,
for other no fame,

si wolde ir magettûm
she would her maidenhood

bringen an ir ende
bring to her end

sunder missewende.
without disgrace.

Vernemet scône hovescheit
Hear fair courtliness

umbe ein pharît daz si reit:
about a palfrey which she rode:

ein tûre zoum lach dar ane.
a costly bridle lay there on.

daz winster ôre und der mane
the left ear and the mane

wâren im wîz als der snê.
were to-it white as the snow.

ez was ir uber sê
it was to-her over sea

gesant bî einem môre.
sent by a Moor.

im was daz zewese ôre
to-it was the right ear

und der hals swarz als ein rabe.
and the neck black as a raven.

ich moht û wunder dar abe
I might to-you wonder there of

sagen, ob es wâre nôt.
tell, if of-it were need.

daz houbet was im al rôt
the head was to-it all red

und wol geschaffen genûch,
and well shaped enough,

und ein bein rôt und ein bûch,
and a leg red and a belly,

der ander bûch was ime vale
the other belly was to-it fallow

al daz bein hin ze tale.
all the leg thither to valley.

si mohtez gerne rîten.
she might-it gladly ride.

im glizzen die sîten
to-it gleamed the sides

als ein wilder phâwe.
as a wild peacock.

diu ein gofe was aphelgrâwe,
the one croup was dapple-gray,

rehte als ein lêbart.
right as a leopard.

harde ez̧ besehen wart,
very it looked-at was,

dô siz̧ geriten brahte dare.
when she-it ridden brought thither.

der zagel was im einvare
the tail was to-it of-one-color

crisp und swarz als ein bech.
curly and black as a pitch.

ez̧ gienk ebene in den wech,
it went evenly in the way,

sanfte und balde genûch.
softly and swiftly enough.

die frowen ez̧ ritterlîchen trûch.
the lady it knightly bore.

Der satel, der dar ûffe lach,
The saddle, which there upon lay,

der was als ich û sagen mach
it was as I to-you tell may

vore wâr und ungelogen:
for true and unlied:

im wâren die satelbogen
to-it were the saddlebows

gût von helfenbeine,
good of ivory,

gezieret mit gesteine,
adorned with gems,

ze mâz̧en enge unde wît.
in measure narrow and wide.

diu decke was ein samît,
the cover was a samite,

mit goldînen nageln beslagen.
with golden nails studded.

daz pharît daz in solde tragen
the palfrey which it should bear

des mûste wol gephlegen sîn.
of-that must well cared-for be.

die darmgurteln wâren sîdîn,
the girths were of-silk,

veste unde lange,
firm and long,

und die antphange,
and the stirrup-straps,

dâ mans ane gorde,
where one-them on girded,

daz was ein tûre borde,
that was a costly braid,

und daz vorbûge
and the breast-strap

ein borde vil gefûge,
a braid very fitting,

genât ûf einen samît
sewn onto a samite

(des geluste sie dô zû der zît)
(of-that pleased her then at the time)

zweier vingere breit.
of-two fingers broad.

dorch Laurente sie reit
through Laurentum she rode

Camille diu rîche
Camilla the rich

vil behagelîche.
very pleasingly.

die hêren und die frouwen,
the lords and the ladies,

die si wolden schouwen,
who her would behold,

si quâmen zû den strâzen,
they came to the streets,

si stunden unde sâzen,
they stood and sat,

ze den venstern sie lâgen.
at the windows they lay.

alle die si gesâgen,
all who her saw,

die dûhte si vil wol getân.
to-them seemed she very well made.

Turnûs mohtes niht enphân
Turnus might-her not receive

baz danne her tete,
better than he did,

wande si dorch sîne bete
for she through his asking

ze sîner helfe komen was.
to his help come was.

vor Laurente an ein gras,
before Laurentum on a grass,

als man ûz der borch reit,
as one out-of the castle rode,

an eine scône wisen breit
on a fair meadow broad

heten herberge genomen
had lodging taken

ir boten die ê wâren komen,
her messengers who before were come,

dâ bevor alle wîle
there before all while

vil nâch eine mîle
very nearly a mile

wâren geslagen ir gezelt
were pitched their tents

an die wîsen und an daz velt.
on the meadow and on the field.

Dô der hêre Turnûs gwan
When the lord Turnus won

alsô manegen rîchen man,
so many-a rich man,

als ir wole habet vernomen,
as you well have heard,

und si ze samene wâren komen
and they to together were come

dâ her trôst hete zû,
where he comfort had to,

eines morgenes frû
one morning early

die forsten her zû zime gewan,
the princes he to him won,

die im gerne wolden gestân.
who to-him gladly would stand-by.

her leite sie an eine stat
he led them to a place

und si giengen swar hers bat
and they went whither he-them bade

in ein boumgarden an ein gras.
into an orchard onto a grass.

her saget in des im nôt was,
he told them what to-him need was,

her sprach ‚lieben frunt mîn,
he spoke ‚dear friends mine,

die dorch mich her komen sîn,
who for me hither come are,

mîne lanthêren,
my land-lords,

got lône û der êren,
God reward to-you of-the honors,

die ir mir habet getân.
which you to-me have done.

moht ich ûch sô wol enphân,
might I you so well receive,

als mir lieb wâre
as to-me dear were

(sprach der helt mâre),
(spoke the hero famous),

dâ hân ich gûten willen zû.
there have I good will to.

ez is reht daz ich ez tû
it is right that I it do

so ich beste mach unde kan.
as I best may and can.

mîne mâge und mîne man
my kinsmen and my men

vernemet, des is mir nôt,
hear, of-that is to-me need,

dorch welhe rede ich û enbôt,
for which speech I to-you sent-word,

als ir mir gûtes gunnet,
as you to-me good grant,

dâ ir vernemen kunnet
where you perceive can

daz ich unrehte tû,
that I wrong do,

nimmer gehelfet mir derzû:
never help me thereto:

sprechet daz ichz lâze.
say that I-it should-leave.

ich hân es gerne mâze,
I have of-it gladly measure,

ich wil es gerne abe stân.
I will of-it gladly off stand.

is aber diu rede sô getân,
is but the speech so made,

daz ir mîn reht erkennet
that you my right know

und ir ûch des versinnet,
and you yourselves of-it bethink,

sô stêt mir fruntlîchen bî,
so stand to-me in-friendship by,

als ûwer trouwe gût sî.'
as your faith good be.'

Turnus's Council of War

XXIV

Turnus tells his princes that Latinus has broken his oath. Mezentius advises summoning Aeneas to answer and attacking only if he refuses; Messapus calls that too soft and urges a siege at once. The council agrees, and Turnus marches on Montalbane. Aeneas, forewarned, has gathered weapons and food, and Turnus sees with dismay how steep the rock is and how its one narrow neck is cut through. Aeneas posts men on towers and battlements and watches and archers at the gates; the castle on its white stone is the new Alba.

Aber sprach Turnûs
Again spoke Turnus

‚mîn hêre der kunech Latînûs
‚my lord the king Latinus

der wart des ze râde,
he became of-it to counsel,

daz her sîne genâde
that he his grace

sô an mich kêrde
so on me turned

und mich sô vil êrde
and me so much honored

vor den lûten offenlîche,
before the people openly,

daz her mir sîn rîche
that he to-me his realm

mit sîner tohter wolde geben,
with his daughter would give,

ob ich in mohte uberleben,
if I him might outlive,

daz ich es alles gewielde
that I of-it all should-rule

und daz ich behielde
and that I should-keep

sîn tohter ze wîbe,
his daughter as woman,

und bî sîme lîbe
and by his body

gab her mir borge unde lant,
gave he to-me castles and land,

sô daz ich dâ nieman ne vant,
so that I there no-one — found,

der iht dar wider sprâche.
who aught there against should-speak.

daz herz immer zerbrâche,
that he-it ever should-break,

des ne hetich deheinen wân.
of-that — had-I no expectation.

nû wil hers alles abe stân.
now will he-of-it all off stand.

iedoch hât her es gesworen
yet has he it sworn

und manech helt wol geboren,
and many-a hero well born,

die ich genennen wole kan,
whom I name well can,

die forsten und des kuneges man,
the princes and the king's men,

die man hât ze den besten.
whom one has for the best.

daz lant und die vesten
the land and the strongholds

die hân ich noch in mîner gewalt
them have I yet in my power

(sprach der mâre helt balt),
(spoke the famous hero bold),

als ez dâ geredet was.
as it there spoken was.

nû is ein hêre Ênêas
now is a lord Aeneas

von Troien in daz lant komen,
from Troy into the land come,

als ir wole habet vernomen,
as you well have heard,

in vil korzen stunden.
in very short hours.

der hât sich underwunden
he has himself undertaken

grôzes hôchmûtes,
of-great arrogance,

daz her mich mînes gûtes
that he me of-my goods

betalle wil enterben.
wholly will disinherit.

dar zû wil ubele werben
there to will ill woo

mîn hêre der kunich Latîn:
my lord the king Latinus:

daz rîche und die tohter sîn,
the realm and the daughter his,

daz mir dâ gegeben was,
which to-me there given was,

daz wil her daz Ênêas
that will he that Aeneas

habe unde behalde.
should-have and should-keep.

nû sprechet helide balde,
now speak heroes bold,

lieben frunt alle,
dear friends all,

wie û daz gevalle,
how to-you that pleases,

unde râtet dar zû,
and counsel there to,

wie ich daz beste getû
how I the best should-do

nâch diu und ir habet vernomen,
after that and you have heard,

nû ir dorch mich her sît komen.
now you for me hither are come.

Ênêas der Troiân
Aeneas the Trojan

der hât uns laster getân,
he has to-us reproach done,

daz is noch ungerochen.
that is yet unavenged.

unser borch hât her zebrochen
our castle has he broken

unde dar zû unser lant
and there to our land

geroubet unde verbrant
plundered and burned

unde unser lûte erslagen.
and our people slain.

daz wil ich û allen klagen
that will I to-you all lament

von den leiden gesten.
of the loathsome guests.

ouch wânent sie vesten
also ween they to-fortify

ein borch in diseme lande.
a castle in this land.

den schaden und die schande,
the harm and the disgrace,

die mir der selbe Troiân
which to-me the same Trojan

mit sînen lûten hât getân,
with his people has done,

daz lâzet û allen leit sîn,
that let to-you all grievous be,

(sprach her) lieben frunt mîn.‘
(spoke he) dear friends mine.‘

Dô sprach ein forste hêre,
Then spoke a prince lordly,

der het michel êre,
who had great honor,

daz was der hêre Mezentiûs,
that was the lord Mezentius,

‚got weiz, hêre Turnûs,
‚God knows, lord Turnus,

daz ir sprechet daz is wâr.
that you speak that is true.

ich weiz ez mêre danne ein jâr
I know it more than a year

unde ich hân ez wol vernomen,
and I have it well heard,

wie ir ze samene wâret komen,
how you to together were come,

ir und der kunich Latîn.
you and the king Latinus.

ez solde von rehte stâte sîn,
it should by right steadfast be,

als ez dâ gesworen was.
as it there sworn was.

nû hât der hêre Ênêas
now has the lord Aeneas

in vil korzen stunden
in very short hours

sich sîn underwunden,
himself of-it undertaken,

er hât beroubet daz lant
he has plundered the land

und Tyrrêô sîn hûs verbrant,
and to-Tyrrheus his house burned,

her und sîn Troiâne,
he and his Trojans,

und wil Montalbâne
and will Montalbane

machen zeiner veste.
make to-a stronghold.

nû tût ab ir daz beste.
now do but you the best.

ob ez dise hêren dunket gût,
if it these lords seems good,

sô weiz ich daz ir wole tût:
so know I that you well do:

nû her tumblîch hât getân,
now he foolishly has done,

nû solt ir wîslîch ane vân.
now shall you wisely at begin.

ir sît ein edel jungelink:
you are a noble youngling:

mit sinne solt ir ûwer dink
with sense shall you your thing

ze gûten dingen bringen.
to good things bring.

ir solt im tagedingen
you shall to-him summon

an ûwern hof vor ûwer man,
to your court before your men,

so ich allerbeste gedenken kan,
as I of-all-best think can,

und solt in lâzen mit frede,
and shall him leave with peace,

unze ir in gesetzet ze rede
until you him set to account

umb alle sîne missetât.
about all his misdeed.

daz dunket mich der beste rât.
that seems to-me the best counsel.

ne mach hers niht gebûzen,
— may he-of-it not atone,

daz ir in welt grûzen,
that you him will greet,

is daz hern wil noch enkan,
(if)-is that he will nor can,

sô manet frunt unde man,
so summon friends and men,

hêren unde mâge.
lords and kinsmen.

ob her an die wâge
if he on the scale

sîn leben wil lâzen,
his life will leave,

sô solt ir'n der unmâzen
so shall you-him of-the excess

mit sînen schanden bringen wider
with his disgraces bring back

unde brechet ime nider
and break to-him down

die borch, die her bouwen wil.
the castle, which he build will.

ir habet heres alsô vil,
you have of-host so much,

daz irz lîhte getût,
that you-it easily do,

ob ez dise hêren dunket gût.'
if it these lords seems good.'

Dô Messâpûs daz hôrde,
When Messapus that heard,

Mezentiô her antworde,
to-Mezentius he answered,

dô sprach der vorste rîche
then spoke the prince rich

‚ir habet vil wunderlîche
‚you have very wondrously

Turnô gerâten.
to-Turnus counseled.

die ûch der rede bâten,
those-who you of-the speech asked,

die wâren ubele bedaht.
they were ill minded.

als irz vore habet braht,
as you-it forward have brought,

ob ez û ieman geriet,
if it to-you anyone counseled,

des ne volge ich û niet,
in-that — follow I you not,

daz im wol gezâme,
that to-him well should-befit,

daz her immer nâme
that he ever should-take

sûne oder gerihte,
atonement or judgment,

daz wâre alze lîhte
that were all-too light

dem die ime sîn lant
for-him who to-him his land

beroubet hât und verbrant,
plundered has and burned,

als man vil wole gesiht.
as one very well sees.

hern darf im widersagen niht
he needs to-him renounce-peace not

noch mêre warnen.
nor more warn.

man schaffe daz siz arnen
one bring-about that they-it pay-for

die Troiâre und Ênêas,
the Trojans and Aeneas,

wandes lutzel nôt was,
for-of-it little need was,

daz man sîne lûte slûch.
that one his people struck.

si heten im widersaget genûch,
they had to-him renounced-peace enough,

ob ir der wârheite giet.
if you of-the truth admit.

sine sint ouch sô tumb niet,
they are also so foolish not,

sie ne sîn des wol gewis,
they unless be of-it well certain,

daz Turnûs ir vîant is
that Turnus their foe is

und sînes herzen unholt.
and of-his heart unfriendly.

ez is betalle ir scholt,
it is wholly their fault,

daz ime Turnûs is gehaz.
that to-him Turnus is hostile.

ouch wizzet wole daz,
also know well that,

daz her im wole schaden mach.
that he to-him well harm may.

hern gefridet ez nimmer tach
he makes-peace it never day

mit mînem râte mêre:
with my counsel more:

ez gêt im an sîn êre.
it goes to-him on his honor.

sine mogen sich nimmer des bewaren,
they may themselves never of-it guard,

wir solen zû der borch varen,
we shall to the castle fare,

die her dâ wânet vesten
which he there weens to-fortify

mit den sînen gesten
with the his guests

der ubermûtige man.
the arrogant man.

daz is vile baz getân,
that is very better done,

daz man in dannen trîbe,
that one him thence should-drive,

denner dâ belîbe
than-he there should-remain

mit gewalde under unsern dank;
with force against our thanks;

wande ez wirt vile lank,
for it becomes very long,

ê dan manz mit gedinge
ere than one-it with bargaining

ze fromem ende bringe,
to profitable end should-bring,

mich ne triege mîn wân.‘
me unless should-deceive my ween.‘

dô dûhtez genûge wol getân,
then seemed-it to-many well done,

daz Turnûs alsô tâte.
that Turnus so should-do.

dô worden sie ze râte
then became they to counsel

daz man die borch besâze,
that one the castle should-besiege,

und ob her sich vermâze
and if he himself should-dare

mit den sînen holden,
with the his liegemen,

daz si sich weren wolden,
that they themselves defend would,

daz man si drûffe vienge
that one them thereon should-catch

und marterde oder hienge:
and should-torture or should-hang:

des wâren sie wole wert.
of-that were they well worthy.

des hete lange gegert
that had long desired

Turnûs der gemeide,
Turnus the glad,

wande im vile leide
for to-him very sorrowfully

Ênêas der Troiân
Aeneas the Trojan

dâ vor habete getân:
there before had done:

daz wolder gerne rechen.
that would-he gladly avenge.

die borch wânder zerbrechen,
the castle weened-he to-break,

si was im doch vil ungereit:
it was to-him yet very unready:

des gewan her michel arbeit.
of-that won he great hardship.

Dô daz alsô geredet wart,
When that so spoken was,

dô schûf der hêre sîne vart
then made the lord his journey

Turnûs der wolgetâne
Turnus the well-made

hin ze Montalbâne
thither to Montalbane

mit den die im wâren komen.
with those who to-him were come.

daz hete wol dâ vor vernomen
that had well there before heard

Ênêas der wîse.
Aeneas the wise.

wâfen unde spîse
weapons and food

erwarb vile der Troiân.
acquired much the Trojan.

her unde sîne man,
he and his men,

die her dar hete braht,
whom he thither had brought,

si wâren des wol bedaht,
they were of-it well minded,

daz si sich vaste wolden weren
that they themselves fast would defend

mit den swerden und mit speren,
with the swords and with spears,

mit armbrusten und mit bogen.
with crossbows and with bows.

Turnûs was des betrogen,
Turnus was of-it deceived,

des her gewis wolde wesen,
of-which he certain would be,

daz si nimmer mohten genesen
that they never might survive

ûf der borch einen tach.
on the castle one day.

dô her die wârheit gesach,
when he the truth saw,

dô was her vil unfrô,
then was he very unglad,

want der vels was vile hô.
for the rock was very high.

Der berch was stechel uber al,
The hill was steep over all,

niwan ein hals der was smal,
except a neck which was narrow,

den heten sie dorchhouwen.
which had they hewn-through.

dâ mohte man wol schouwen,
there might one well behold,

daz si frome lûte wâren.
that they valiant people were.

des enmohte in drin jâren,
of-that might in three years,

sint es Ênêas began,
since it Aeneas began,

ein unwerehaft man
a defenseless man

niht sô vile hân getân.
not so much have done.

dô schûf der edel Troiân
then arranged the noble Trojan

mit den sînen holden,
with the his liegemen,

wie si sich weren wolden,
how they themselves defend would,

wer ûffen tornen wâre
who upon towers were

und wie man erkâre
and how one bays

machete albesunder
made all-separately

oben unde under,
above and below,

und wer phlâge der zinne,
and who should-guard the battlements,

daz schûf her mit sinne.
that arranged he with sense.

wîslîch her des ahte,
wisely he of-it reckoned,

wer des nahtes wahte
who of-the night watched

und wer dâ solde slâfen.
and who there should sleep.

her bereite in allen wâfen,
he readied for-them all weapons,

die si kunden genutzen,
which they could use,

und schûf daz gûte schutzen
and arranged that good archers

ûf der porten lâgen
on the gates lay

und der borge phlâgen.
and the castle guarded.

da es allermeiste nôt was,
where of-it most need was,

dar geschûf hêr Ênêas
there arranged lord Aeneas

die allerbesten hûte.
the very-best watches.

her hete helide gûte,
he had heroes good,

die konder wol gewîsen.
whom could-he well direct.

mit wâfen und mit spîse
with weapons and with food

wâren si wol berâten.
were they well provided.

si leisten unde tâten
they performed and did

swaz her gebôt unde bat.
whatever he commanded and asked.

die borch stunt an einer stat
the castle stood in a place

ûf einem wîẓen steine,
on a white stone,

des nanden si algemeine
for-that named they all-together

die edelen Troiâne
the noble Trojans

die nûwen borch Albâne.
the new castle Alba.

Vulcan Forges Aeneas's Arms

XXV

Seeing Turnus about to besiege Aeneas on Montalbane, Venus wins her husband Vulcan's help with her love, ending a seven-year quarrel over the net he forged to catch her with Mars. Vulcan makes a hauberk no weapon can pierce, hose of fine rings, a helmet that brings victory, a sword sharper than the famous swords, and a golden shield, and Venus adds a banner Pallas wove against Arachne. She sends the arms and bids Aeneas seek Evander, Turnus's enemy, at Pallanteum. His men urge him on, and he readies two ships.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

in solhen angesten was,
in such fears was,

do gesach sîn mûder Vênûs,
then saw his mother Venus,

daẓ im der hêre Turnûs
that to-him the lord Turnus

gerne schaden wolde
gladly harm would

und in besitzen solde
and him besiege should

ûf Montalbâne.
on Montalbane.

si quam ze Volkâne
she came to Vulcan

ze deme smidegote ir man,
to the smith-god her man,

flêgen sie in began
to-beseech she him began

Vênûs diu gotinne,
Venus the goddess,

si bôt ime ir minne
she offered to-him her love

(daz was im grôz miete),
(that was to-him great hire),

daz her sie beriete
that he her should-provide

des si in gebâte,
of-what she him should-ask,

und den rât tâte
and the counsel should-do

und daz niene liezе
and that not-at-all should-leave

daz sie in hiezе
what she him should-bid

dorch kost noch dorch arbeit.
for cost nor for labor.

her was der frouwen vil gereit
he was to-the lady very ready

ir willen ze tûne.
her will to do.

dâ wart ein grôz sûne
there was a great atonement

gemachet under in zwein,
made between them two,

daz si trûgen enein,
which they bore together,

dô her ir wolde volgen.
when he her would follow.

sie was ime erbolgen
she was to-him angered

siben jâr dâ bevoren
seven years there before

umb einen wênegen zoren,
about a little wrath,

den ich û wol sagen kan.
which I to-you well tell can.

Volcânûs ir man
Vulcan her man

der weste wol âne spot,
he knew well without mockery,

daz hêre Mars des wîges got
that lord Mars the war's god

bî frouwen Vênûse lach.
by lady Venus lay.

daz heter manegen tach
that had-he many-a day

verswigen unde verholen.
kept-silent and hidden.

dô herz niht mêr wolde dolen,
when he-it not more would endure,

ê siz mohten gemerken,
ere they-it might mark,

ein netze hiezer werken
a net bade-he work

von silber und von stâle:
of silver and of steel:

des nam in michel hâle.
of-that took him great secrecy.

Dô meisterde Volcân
Then wrought Vulcan

ein netze sô getân,
a net so made,

als ich û sagen mach,
as I to-you tell may,

daz manz kûme gesach,
that one-it hardly saw,

sô cleine wârn die drâte.
so fine were the wires.

eines âbendes spâte
one evening late

uber daz bette her ez hienk,
over the bed he it hung,

und alse Mars dar in gienk
and when Mars there in went

und bî Vênûse was gelegen
and by Venus was lain

und der minnen wolde phlegen,
and of-the love would take-care,

dô dûhtes Vulcânum genûch:
then seemed-it to-Vulcan enough:

mit deme netze er sie beslûch
with the net he them encompassed

dâ zehant beide.
there at-once both.

dâ lach ir Vênûs leide,
there lay to-her Venus grievous,

wander braht al die gote dare.
for-he brought all the gods thither.

dô sis worden geware
when they-it became aware

und ez in clagete Volcân,
and it to-them lamented Vulcan,

dô dûhtez sie missetân,
then seemed-it to-them misdone,

dô si daz gesâgen,
when they that saw,

daz si ensament lâgen
that they together lay

einander vile nâ.
to-one-another very near.

idoch was etelîcher dâ,
yet was some-one there,

der gerne offenbâre
who gladly openly

bî Vênûse wâre
by Venus were

dorch solhe sache gevangen.
for such cause caught.

dô daz was ergangen,
when that was happened,

dô wart ime Vênûs gram,
then became to-him Venus hostile,

daz her niemer sider quam
that he never since came

an daz bette dâ si lach
onto the bed where she lay

unze an den tach,
until to the day,

daz si sîn bedorhte.
that she of-him needed.

dô schûf her daz man worhte
then brought-about he that one wrought

der got von deme fûre
the god of the fire

einen halsperch sô tûre,
a hauberk so costly,

daz ê noch sint nehein man
that before nor since no man
deheinen bezeren gewan.
any better won.
Der halsperch was des gût,
The hauberk was of-it good,
daz der man drinne was behût
that the man therein was guarded
vor aller slahte wunden
against all kind-of wounds
ze allen den stunden
at all the hours
daz hern an dem lîbe trûch.
that he-it on the body bore.
her was vast und scône gnûch,
it was firm and fair enough,
lieht von vil gûtem werke,
light of very good work,
daz in mit lîhter sterke
that it with light strength
ein man mohte an gefûren
a man might on put
und sich drinne wol berûren,
and himself therein well stir,
als in [einem] lînînem gewant.
as in [a] linen garment.
vil wol daz Turnûs bevant,
very well that Turnus found,
dô der hêre Ênêas
when the lord Aeneas
dâ mite gewâfent was,
there with armed was,
dô her im sînen lîb nam.
when he from-him his life took.

dô der halsperch vollequam,
when the hauberk was-completed,

harde lobete man in dô.
very praised one it then.

zwô hosen worhter im derzô
two hose wrought-he for-him thereto

scône wîz îsenîn,
fair white of-iron,

sine mohten niht bezer sîn,
they might not better be,

sô nie ritter nehein
as never knight any

scôner geleite an sîn bein,
fairer laid on his leg,

veste vone cleinen ringen,
firm of small rings,

der man mit deheinen dingen
which one with no things

niene mohte gebrechen,
at-all might break,

dorchslahen noch dorchstechen.
strike-through nor pierce-through.

Einen helm sander der mite.
A helmet sent-he there with.

swar sô her gienge oder rite,
whither so he went or rode,

der in ûf hete gebunden,
who it up had bound,

in ne mohte niht verwunden,
him — might naught wound,

hern worde ouch nimmer sigilôs.
he should-become also never victoryless.

wie wol man dar ane kôs,
how well one there on saw,

daz in meisterde Volcân!
that it wrought Vulcan!

her was lieht und wol getân,
it was light and well made,

brûn lûter als ein glas.
brown clear as a glass.

vil wole her geschaffen was,
very well it shaped was,

gnûch wît unde vile hart,
enough wide and very hard,

sô nie dehein bezer wart.
as never any better became.

her was vil wol ze lobene.
it was very well to praise.

dâ stunt ein blûme obene
there stood a flower above

von dorchslagenem golde,
of pierced gold,

alsez Volcân wolde,
as-it Vulcan would,

dar inne ein rôter jachant.
there in a red jacinth.

diu lîste und daz halsbant
the border and the neck-band

daz was vil wol gesteinet golt.
that was very well jeweled gold.

Volcân was Ênêase holt,
Vulcan was to-Aeneas devoted,

daz wart wol an dem helme schîn.
that became well on the helmet seen.

hern mohte nimmer bezer sîn
it might never better be

mit deheiner slahte dinge.
with any kind-of thing.

goldîn wâren die ringe
golden were the rings

von gûteme gesmîde.
of good forging.

die snûre wâren sîde,
the laces were silk,

dâ mite man in ane bant.
there with one it on bound.

der hêre, dem her wart gesant,
the lord, to-whom it was sent,

der was es vile wole wert.
he was of-it very well worthy.

dar zû sander ime ein swert,
there to sent-he to-him a sword,

daz scharpher unde herter was
that sharper and harder was

dan der tûre Eckesas
than the costly Eckesachs

noch der mâre Mîmink
nor the famous Mimung

noch der gûte Nagelrink
nor the good Nagelring

noch Haltecleir noch Durendârt:
nor Hauteclere nor Durendart:

sô nie dehein helm wart,
as never any helmet became,

noch dehein schilt sô getân,
nor any shield so made,

der dâ vore mohte gestân,
which there before might stand,

ez ne scrietez allez enzwei;
it unless cut-it all in-two;

dâ vor enhalf niht ein ei
there before helped not an egg

weder îsen noch stâl.
neither iron nor steel.

ez hete goldîniu mâl
it had golden marks

unde gesilbert beide.
and silvered both.

goldîn was diu scheide,
golden was the sheath,

wol gesteinet und wol beslagen.
well jeweled and well studded.

solde manz vor den keiser tragen,
should one-it before the emperor carry,

den hêrsten, der ie krône trûch,
the lordliest, who ever crown bore,

ez wâre lobelîch genûch.
it were praiseworthy enough.

Der knoph und daz gehelze
The pommel and the hilt

was golt unde gesmelze,
was gold and enamel,

dâ mite man ez gorde,
where with one it girded,

der vezzel was ein borde
the belt was a braid

alsô breit sô ein hant.
as broad as a hand.

ez wart eime helde gesant,
it was to-a hero sent,

der ez wol nutzen solde.
who it well use should.

einen schilt von golde
a shield of gold

sandim der mite Volcân;
sent-him there with Vulcan;

her woldez wizzen âne wân,
he would-it know without doubt,

dô hern meisteren began,
when he-it to-fashion began,

daz in nimmer dehein man
that it never any man

mit wâfen mohte enginnen.
with weapon might cut.

her was gevazzet innen
it was framed inside

mit borden und mit phelle
with braids and with silk

und was al daz gestelle
and was all the frame

mit goldînen nagelen dran geslagen.
with golden nails thereon struck.

swer sô in solde tragen,
whoever so it should bear,

der solde von rehte ein helt wesen,
he should by right a hero be,

daz sagent die daz hânt gelesen.
that say those-who that have read.

daz was der hêre Ênêas.
that was the lord Aeneas.

vil wol daz bret gesniten was
very well the board cut was

unde gefûchlîche gebogen
and fittingly bent

wol behûtet und wol bezogen.
well protected and well covered.

daz meisterde Volcân.
that wrought Vulcan.
daz gerieme daz was corduwân:
the strapping that was cordovan:
daz was der frouwen Vênûs rât.
that was the lady Venus's counsel.
ein borde was dar ûf genât
a braid was there on sewn
dorch hovescheit und dorch wunder
for courtliness and for wonder
und ein samît dar under,
and a samite there under,
Ichn weiz weder grûne od rôt.
I-not know whether green or red.
ez was getân dorch nôt,
it was done through need,
swer den schilt fûrde,
whoever the shield carried,
daz in niht enrûrde
that him not touched
der borde noch daz leder,
the braid nor the leather,
unde daz in der deweder
and that him of-them neither
an den hals niht enribe
on the neck not chafed
und im diu hût ganz belibe.
and to-him the skin whole remained.
daz was dâ mite wol behût.
that was there with well guarded.
diu buckele was vil gût,
the boss was very good,
sô nie niht bezzers mohte sîn.
as never aught better might be.

sie was alwîz silberîn,
it was all-white of-silver,

geworht harde cleine,
wrought very fine,

gezieret mit gesteine,
adorned with gems,

smaragde und rubîne,
emeralds and rubies,

topazîe und sardîne,
topazes and sards,

crisolite und amatisten,
chrysolites and amethysts,

die wâren mit listen
which were with skill

gesetzet drin genûge.
set therein enough.

dâ stunden inne mit fûge
there stood in with fitness

granâte und saphiere.
garnets and sapphires.

ez was gefrumet schiere,
it was made quickly,

dô ez der meister gebôt.
when it the master commanded.

der lêwe was betalle rôt,
the lion was wholly red,

der gemâlet was der ane.
which painted was there on.

dar zû sande im einen vanen
there to sent to-him a banner

sîn mûder diu gotinne,
his mother the goddess,

der was geworht mit sinne.
which was wrought with sense.

Ich sage û wes her gût was.
I tell to-you of-what it good was.

diu gotinne Pallas
the goddess Pallas

worhten zeiner zîte
wrought-it at-a time

wider Arânjen ze strîte,
against Arachne in contest,

dô si sich wider ir vermaz.
when she herself against her presumed.

beide gelobeten sie daz
both vowed they that

umb den hêrlîchen vanen,
about the lordly banner,

sweder ir beste worhte drane,
whichever of-them best wrought thereon,

daz si het immer die meisterschaft.
that she should-have ever the mastery.

dâ hûb sich michel vîentschaft
there raised itself great enmity

enzwischen den gotinnen.
between the goddesses.

Aragnes wart zeiner spinnen
Arachne became to-a spider

dorch rouwe und dorch zoren,
through rue and through wrath,

daz sie hete verloren
that she had lost

die meisterschaft diu ir was,
the mastery which hers was,

ê danne sir frouwe Pallas
ere than it-from-her lady Pallas

ze der stunt ane gewan.
at the hour off won.

ez was unheil daz sis began:
it was misfortune that she-it began:

dar nâch ergieng ez ir iedoch.
there after went it to-her nevertheless.

des phleget al ir kunne noch,
of-that takes-care all her kin yet,

daz si spinnen unde weben,
that they spin and weave,

dar ane verliesent sie ir leben.
there on lose they their life.

Dô daz gewâfen was gereit,
When the armor was ready,

dâ grôz list und arbeit
where great skill and labor

zû wâren getân,
to were done,

dô sandez hêre Volcân
then sent-it lord Vulcan

Vênerî der frouwen
to-Venus the lady

und hiez ez sie beschouwen.
and bade it her behold.

und alsez vor si quam,
and when-it before her came,

dô dûhtez sie vil lussam
then seemed-it to-her very lovely

und alle diez gesâgen.
and all who-it saw.

ze samene sie dô lâgen
in company they then lay

zû der nâhisten naht,
at the next night,

alser hete vollebraht
as-he had fulfilled

ir gebot und ir bete.
her command and her asking.

ichn darf û sagen was her tete?
I-not need to-you tell what he did?

sich geniete gûter minne
himself had-his-fill of-good love

der got mit der gotinne.
the god with the goddess.

Dô daz alsô verre quam,
When that so far came,

Vênûs einen boten nam,
Venus a messenger took,

den si wole erkande.
whom she well knew.

daz gewâfen si dô sande
the armor she then sent

ir sune dâ her was.
to-her son where he was.

des frowete sich Ênêas,
of-that rejoiced himself Aeneas,

wandez was im vile nôt.
for-it was to-him very need.

bî dem boten si ime enbôt
by the messenger she to-him sent-word

ein vil liebez mâre,
a very welcome tidings,

daz ein kunich wâre
that a king were

dâ bî in einem lande,
there by in a land,

den si wole erkande,
whom she well knew,

dâ ze Pallantê,
there at Pallanteum,

der was Turnô vil gevê,
who was to-Turnus very hostile,

wander tete im vile zoren.
for-he did to-him much wrath.

dâ heten sie vil an verloren
there had they much on lost

der eine und ouch der ander.
the one and also the other.

der kunich hiez Êvander
the king was-called Evander

und was ze Pallantê sîn hûs.
and was at Pallanteum his house.

dô hiez frouwe Vênûs,
then bade lady Venus,

daz her zûzim fûre
that he to-him should-fare

unde mit im swûre
and with him should-swear

und helfe an ime suchte,
and help in him should-seek,

ob her des geruchte,
if he of-it cared,

daz her der sorgen worde belôst.
that he of-the cares should-become released.

her solde helfe unde trôst
he should help and comfort

vil an ime vinden.
much in him find.

her mohte im wole senden
he might to-him well send

zwei tûsent sîner manne.
two thousand of-his men.

ez ne was niht verre dannen
it — was not far thence

von der borch, dâ Ênêas
from the castle, where Aeneas

mit sînen mannen ûffe was.
with his men upon was.

Dô hêr Ênêas vernam
When lord Aeneas heard

die boteschaft diu ime quam
the message which to-him came

und daz gewâfene besach,
and the armor looked-at,

dô was im allen den tach
then was to-him all the day

vile wole ze mûte;
very well in mind;

im enmoht von solhem gûte
to-him might of such good

niht lieber geschehen.
not dearer happen.

diu wâfen hiez her besehen
the weapons bade he look-at

sîne lûte alle.
his people all.

ez mûste in wol gevallen,
it must to-them well please,

wandez was vil lobelîch.
for-it was very praiseworthy.

dô sprach rittergelîch,
then spoke every-knight,

daz ez lobelîch wâre.
that it praiseworthy were.

ouch sageter in daz mâre,
also told-he them the tidings,

daz im sîn mûder enbôt.
which to-him his mother sent-word.

der helfe was im aller nôt,
of-the help was to-him all need,

wand diu angest was im nâ.
for the fear was to-him near.

dô ne was nieman dâ
then — was no-one there

under aller der diete,
among all the folk,

der ez ime widerriete,
who it to-him counseled-against,

hern fûre dâ hin balde:
unless-he should-fare there thither quickly:

daz rieten junge unde alde.
that counseled young and old.

do gelustes in deste baz,
then pleased-it him the better,

wand si sprâchen alle daz,
for they spoke all that,

daz ez in wol geviele.
that it to-them well pleased.

dô hiezer zwêne kiele
then bade-he two keels

schiere bereiten,
quickly ready,

hern wolde langer beiten,
he-not would longer wait,

mit schiffen wolder dâ hin varen.
with ships would-he there thither fare.

idoch wolder allerêrst bewaren
yet would-he first-of-all guard

sîne borch Albâne
his castle Alba

und sîne Troiâne,
and his Trojans,

von den her wolde scheiden.
from whom he would part.

betalle zwô tageweiden
wholly two day's-journeys

was Pallantê dannen niet.
was Pallanteum thence not.

dô ez im sîn mûder riet,
when it to-him his mother counseled,

undez sînen mannen lieb was,
and-it to-his men dear was,

do beriet der hêre Ênêas
then arranged the lord Aeneas

sîn dink mit sînen mannen
his thing with his men

ê danner fûre dannen.
ere than-he should-fare thence.

Aeneas Leaves for Pallanteum

XXVI

Aeneas exhorts his men to defend the castle and promises to return within six days at the longest, then takes leave of his son Ascanius, commends him to his men, and sails up the Tiber through a night and a day. At sunset he reaches Pallanteum, where Rome now stands, and finds Evander and his people keeping a feast in tents by the river. It marks the day Hercules slew Cacus, a monster living in a hollow rock that had bitten many to death and laid waste the land, and burned its body.

Her sprach ‚lieben frunt mîn,
He spoke ‚dear friends mine,

nû wir here komen sîn
now we hither come are

an unser reht erbelant,
to our rightful heritage-land,

dar uns die gote hânt gesant
whither us the gods have sent

und uns die borch hânt gegeben:
and to-us the castle have given:

al die wîle daz wir leben,
all the while that we live,

vâhen wirz manlîchen ane,
begin we-it manfully on,

des bitich ûch alle und mane,
of-that ask-I you all and exhort,

wande ir gûte knehte sît
for you good knights are

unde in angest unde in strît
and into fear and into battle

vile dicke sît komen
very often are come

und ouch daz ofte habet vernomen
and also that often have heard

(sprach der hêre Ênêas),
(spoke the lord Aeneas),

dâ lutzel lûte frome was,
where few people valiant were,

die sich sazten ze werc
who themselves set to defense

wider ein grôzez here,
against a great host,

daz si sich erwerden.
that they themselves defended.

wir kunnen mit den swerden
we can with the swords

und mit schilden und mit speren
and with shields and with spears

baz vehten und uns weren,
better fight and ourselves defend,

dan dise lûte kunnen.
than these people can.

wir haben hie begunnen
we have here begun

dirre gûten veste:
this good stronghold:

nû tût alle daz beste,
now do all the best,

weret ûch alsô helide,
defend yourselves as heroes,

ûwern lîb und ûwer selide!
your body and your dwelling!

irn moget ninder gefliehen,
you may nowhere flee,

heizęt ûr valporten ûf ziehen
bid your portcullises up draw

und weret ûch hier inne
and defend yourselves here within

manlîch und mit sinne,
manfully and with sense,

û geschiht al deste baz.
to-you happens all the better.

ir moget wole merken daz,
you may well mark that,

al hân ich sô vil bevoren,
though have I so much before,

daz ir mich ze hêren habet erkoren,
that you me as lord have chosen,

ich ne bin niht wan ein man.
I — am naught but a man.

swer aller beste gedenken kan
whoever of-all best think can

hern salz den andern niht helen.
he shall-it from-the others not conceal.

waz mach ich û mêr bevelen
what may I to-you more commend

armen unde rîchen?
poor and rich?

ez is û iegelîchen
it is to-you each

an sîn selbes lîb bevolen
on his own body commended

und is û allen unverholen:
and is to-you all unbidden:

weret ûch, des is û nôt,
defend yourselves, of-that is to-you need,

daz ir iht geliget tôt
that you not should-lie dead

mit laster unde mit schanden.
with reproach and with disgrace.

gedenket wole zû den handen,
think well to the hands,

sô moget ir harde wol genesen.
so may you very well survive.

des solt ir alle vlîzịch wesen.‘
of-that shall you all zealous be.‘

Dô sprach aber mêre
Then spoke again more

Ênêas der hêre
Aeneas the lord

‚got gebiete û daz ir wol tût,
‚God command you that you well do,

wande disiu borch is gût,
for this castle is good,

die uns got hie hât bescheret.
which to-us God here has allotted.

sie is immer erweret
it is ever defended

vor storme und vor mangen.
against assault and against mangonels.

lâzẹt ûch niht belangen,
let yourselves not grow-weary,

ich kume wider schiere
I come back quickly

uber drî tage oder viere,
after three days or four,

ze langest in sehs tagen.
at longest in six days.

ûwer nehein sal verzagen
of-you none shall despair
(sprach Ênêas der wîse),
(spoke Aeneas the wise),
ir habet genûch spîse
you have enough food
unde gewâfenes vil,
and of-weapons much,
swelch sô mannegelîch wil
whichever so each-one will
unde des û nôt is.
and of-which to-you need is.
ir solt alle wesen gewis,
you shall all be certain,
daz ich gerne wider kome
that I gladly back come
sô daz ich û gefrome
so that I you avail
und die borch erlôse.
and the castle release.
untrôst is bôse:
discouragement is wicked:
habet alle gûten trôst,
have all good comfort,
ir werdet vile wole erlôst,
you become very well released,
sal es gelucke walden.
(if)-shall of-it luck rule.

ir solt ûch wole enthalden
you shall yourselves well hold

mit sinne unde mit mâzen
with sense and with measure

ûwer nehein sal sich lâzen
of-you none shall himself let

niht ze harde anz gemach.‘
at-all too hard to-the ease.‘

dô herz allez gesprach
when he-it all spoke

der mâre helt lussam,
the famous hero lovely,

urloub her dô nam
leave he then took

ze Ascânjô sîme sun,
of Ascanius his son,

alser von rehte solde tûn.
as-he by right should do.

he bevalhin sînen mannen
he commended-him to-his men

unde fûr dô dannen
and fared then thence

mit manlîcher gwarheit.
with manly caution.

von der borch her ze tale reit
from the castle he to valley rode

zû der Tiver an den stat,
to the Tiber to the bank,

aldâ her in daz schif trat
where he into the ship stepped

mit den sînen holden,
with the his liegemen,

die mit im varen solden.
who with him fare should.

Dô der hêre Ênêas
When the lord Aeneas

in daz schif komen was
into the ship come was

mit den sînen mannen
with the his men

die mit im fûren dannen,
who with him fared thence,

dô hûben sie diu schif ane
then raised they the ships on

und fûren balde hin dane
and fared quickly thither away

die Tiver al ze berge.
the Tiber all up stream.

si fûrden halsberge,
they carried hauberks,

schilde spere unde bogen.
shields spears and bows.

ir segele hetens ûf gezogen,
their sails had-they up drawn,

der wint gieng in vaste nâch.
the wind went to-them fast after.

zû der verte was in gâch,
to the journey was to-them haste,

si stûrden unde rûrden.
they steered and rowed.

dô bat her die in fûrden
then bade he those-who him carried

daz sis wâren ernesthaht.
that they-of-it were earnest.

dô fûrens alle die naht
then fared-they all the night

und al den anderen tach,
and all the other day,

unze daz man wole sach
until that one well saw

daz diu sunne ensedil solde gân.
that the sun to-setting should go.

dô quam der edile Troiân,
then came the noble Trojan,

des hêren Anchîses baren,
the lord Anchises's child,

ze Pallantê zû gevaren
to Pallanteum to fared

aldâ Rôme nû stêt.
where Rome now stands.

da diu Tiver in daz mere gêt
where the Tiber into the sea goes

was her mit schiffen komen dar:
was he with ships come thither:

der borch worden sie gewar.
of-the castle became they aware.

Dô der helt lussam
When the hero lovely

zû der borch gevaren quam;
to the castle fared came;

der schifmûde Ênêas,
the ship-weary Aeneas,

zû den selben stunden was
at the same hours was

der kunich ûz der borch komen,
the king out-of the castle come,

alse ir wole habet vernomen,
as you well have heard,

mit grôzen frouden unde spile.
with great joys and play.

do gesâgens allenthalben vile
then saw-they on-all-sides many

hutten unde gezelde
huts and tents

an der wisen und an dem velde
on the meadow and on the field

bî der Tiber an einer sîte.
by the Tiber on one side.

dâ begienk ein hôgezîte
there observed a feast

der kunich Êvander
the king Evander

und manich man ander.
and many-a man other.

vil flîzịch wâren sie des.
very zealous were they of-it.

ez was antach daz Hercules
it was the-day that Hercules

ein wunderlîch tier dâ erslûch,
a wondrous beast there slew,

daz in leides tete genûch:
which to-them of-sorrow did enough:

der lûte ez vile erbeiz,
of-the people it many bit-to-death,

alse man noch wole weiz.
as one yet well knows.

ez was vil unreine,
it was very unclean,

in eime holen steine
in a hollow stone

was sîn wonunge und sîn hûs:
was its dwelling and its house:

daz monstrum hiez Câcûs.
the monster was-called Cacus.

harde wûstez daz lant.
very laid-waste-it the land.

dô daz Hercules bevant
when that Hercules found-out

und daz wunder dâ vernam,
and the wonder there heard,

von sîme lande er dare quam.
from his land he thither came.

her hete manlîchen mût.
he had manly spirit.

dô wâfende sich der helt gût,
then armed himself the hero good,

daz ez manich man ane sach.
that it many-a man at looked.

her quam dâ daz kunder lach
he came where the monster lay

unde slûch'z ze tôde
and struck-it to death

und lôste vone nôde
and released from distress

daz lût von dem lande.
the people of the land.

daz kunder her verbrande:
the monster he burned:

des lobete man in wît.
for-that praised one him widely.

daz was diu hôgezît,
that was the feast,

die der kunich dâ begienk.
which the king there observed.

hêrlîch her ez ane vienk.
lordly he it at began.

Evander and Pallas

XXVII

Aeneas strikes his sails and comes on with his men bearing olive twigs, the sign of peace, and Evander's son Pallas receives him and leads him to his father. Evander recalls Anchises's gifts at Troy, welcomes Aeneas, and promises to knight Pallas and send him with two thousand men against Turnus. The Trojans play their own games at the feast, and Aeneas tells how Troy fell. Evander summons his land, knights Pallas, and sends him with Aeneas, ten thousand men, and fifty ships, with food for a year and a half.

Dô Ênêas der edele man
When Aeneas the noble man

dare nâhen began,
thither to-near began,

dâ der kunech Êvander lach,
where the king Evander lay,

under allenthalben sach
and-he on-all-sides saw

diu gezelde blîchen:
the tents gleam:

die segele hiezer strîchen
the sails bade-he strike

nider von dem maste.
down from the mast.

her hiez si stûren vaste,
he bade them steer fast,

hern wolde idoch dar nâr niht komen,
he would yet there nearer not come,

ê danner hete vernomen,
ere than-he had heard,

waz heres dâ wâre.
what of-host there were.

dô hete der kunich mâre
then had the king famous

einen sun der hiez Pallas,
a son who was-called Pallas,

der gesach daz Ênêas
who saw that Aeneas

mit schiffen dar zû quam.
with ships there to came.

der junkhêre lussam,
the young-lord lovely,

dô her sîn dâ wart gewar,
when he of-him there became aware,

dô kêrder gegen ime dar.
then turned-he toward him thither.

dô het ouch hêre Ênêas
then had also lord Aeneas

getân als dâ site was,
done as there custom was,

und die mit im wâren komen,
and those-who with him were come,

die heten alle genomen
they had all taken

aller ritter gelîch
of-all knights alike

einen olêes zwîch.
an olive's twig.

daz bezeichent den fride
that betokens the peace

und was in den zîten side
and was in the times custom

wîten uber manich lant,
wide over many-a land,

swer daz hete in sîner hant,
whoever that had in his hand,

im ne schadete nieman niet.
to-him — harmed no-one at-all.

des phlach diu heidensche diet.
of-that took-care the heathen folk.

Do gesach der junkhêr Pallas,
Then saw the young-lord Pallas,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

fridelîche dare quam.
peacefully thither came.

dô tet her alsim wol gezam,
then did he as-to-him well befitted,

balder gegen ime gienk,
quickly-he toward him went,

minnechlîche er in enphienk
lovingly he him received

mit michelen êren.
with great honors.

die stûren hiezer kêren
the rudders bade-he turn

vile schiere ze lande,
very quickly to land,

doch her sîn niht erkande.
though he him not knew.

dô grûztin Pallas.
then greeted-him Pallas.

dô frâgete in Ênêas
then asked him Aeneas

gezogenlîche mâre,
courteously tidings,

wâ der kunich wâre:
where the king were:

dô sagetez ime Pallas
then told-it to-him Pallas

und fûrdin dâ der kunich was.
and led-him where the king was.

Dô der helt lussam
When the hero lovely

vor den alden kunich quam,
before the old king came,

do enphieng in minnechlîche
then received him lovingly

Êvander der rîche.
Evander the rich.

dô sagete ime Ênêas,
then told to-him Aeneas,

wannen her fûr und wer her was
whence he fared and who he was

und war umbe er dare quam.
and where fore he thither came.

dô der kunich daz vernam,
when the king that heard,

sîn geslehte erkander.
his lineage knew-he.

dô sprach der kunech Êvander
then spoke the king Evander

‚Ênêas lieber frunt mîn,
‚Aeneas dear friend mine,

ir solt mir willekomen sîn
you shall to-me welcome be

mit michelme rehte,
with great right,

wande ich ûwer geslehte
for I your lineage

ein teil wole erkenne.
a part well know.

die êre und die minne,
the honor and the love,

die ich û getûn mach
which I to-you do may

beidiu naht unde tach
both night and day

des solt ir sîn vil gewis,
of-that shall you be very certain,

daz û daz gereit is,
that to-you that ready is,

(sprach her) frunt Ênêas.
(spoke he) friend Aeneas.

ich gedenke wol daz ich was
I remember well that I was

ze Troie in dem lande.
at Troy in the land.

vil wole ich erkande
very well I knew

ûwern vater Anchîsen,
your father Anchises,

den frumigen und den wîsen:
the valiant and the wise:

her bôt mir minne und êre
he offered to-me love and honor

vile michels mêre
very much more

dan dâr ieman ander
than there anyone other

(sprach der kunech Êvander):
(spoke the king Evander):

daz ne sal niht sîn verloren.
that — shall not be lost.

her gab mir ein vil gût horen,
he gave to-me a very good horn,

daz beste daz ich ie gewan.
the best that I ever won.

dar zû gab mir der edele man
there to gave to-me the noble man

ein gûten brakken und ein swert
a good brachet and a sword

und gesteines maneges phundes wert,
and of-gems many-a pound's worth,

unde einen gûten bogen
and a good bow

gab mir der edele herzoge,
gave to-me the noble duke,

strâlen hiezer mir vor tragen
arrows bade-he to-me before carry

und einen kocher wol beslagen
and a quiver well studded

mit rôteme golde.
with red gold.

wan daz ichs niene wolde,
except that I-it not-at-all would,

her hete mir michel gût gegeben.
he had to-me great goods given.

des wil ich û, sal ich leben,
for-that will I to-you, shall I live,

lônen mit gûte.
reward with good.

des is mir ze mûte,
of-that is to-me in mind,

daz ichz gerne welle tûn.
that I-it gladly will do.

ich hân einen jungen sun,
I have a young son,

Pallas, den ir hie gesiet,
Pallas, whom you here see,

der nis noch ritter worden niet,
he is yet knight become not,

dem wil ich morgen geben swert,
to-him will I tomorrow give sword,

des hât er lange gegert,
of-that has he long desired,

unde wil in crônen
and will him crown

und wil û des lônen,
and will to-you of-it reward,

des mir ûwer vater tete,
what to-me your father did,

unde leisten ûwer bete,
and perform your asking,

so ich mit deheinen dingen
as I with any things

immer mach volbringen,
ever may fulfill,

des solt ir gewis sîn.
of-that shall you certain be.

ich wil den lieben sun mîn
I will the dear son mine

ensamt û senden hinnen
together-with you send hence

dorch ûwers vater minnen
for your father's love

und dorch ûch selben beide
and for you self both

und Turnô ze leide,
and to-Turnus to sorrow,

dem ich alles ubeles gan.
to-whom I all evil grant.

sô wil ich mîne beste man
so will I my best men

mit mîme sune senden,
with my son send,

die wol torren genenden
who well dare venture

ze manlîchem dinge,
to manly thing,

die die jungelinge
who the younglings

wole kunnen gewîsen.
well can guide.

die wil ich selbe spîsen,
them will I self provision,

zwei tûsent oder mêre
two thousand or more

dorch mîn selbes êre.‘
for my own honor.‘

Êvander der mâre
Evander the famous

sprach dô offenbâre
spoke then openly

‚Ênêas, lieber frunt mîn,
‚Aeneas, dear friend mine,

ir ne solt niht unfrô sîn,
you — shall not unglad be,

ich bin frô, daz ir sît
I am glad, that you are

komen her ze dirre zît,
come hither at this time,

daz ouch û lieb wesen mach,
which also to-you dear be may,

wander is ein hêre tach,
for-it is a lordly day,

den wir hie begên hûte
which we here observe today

ich unde mîne lûte,
I and my people,

als ir wol moget hân vernomen.
as you well may have heard.

nû ir here sît komen,
now you hither are come,

nû solt ir frôlîche leben.‘
now shall you joyfully live.‘

her hiez im ezzenne geben.
he bade to-him to-eat give.

dô nam her wazzer unde twûch.
then took he water and washed.

man gab im alles des genûch
one gave to-him of-all that enough

im und sînen holden,
to-him and to-his liegemen,

des si selbe wolden
of-what they themselves would

ezzen unde trinken,
eat and drink,

des ieman mohte erdenken.
of-what anyone might devise.

Dô si gnûch ze mâzen
When they enough in measure

getrunken unde gâzen
drunk and eaten

alles des in lieb was,
of-all that to-them dear was,

dô sande Ênêas
then sent Aeneas

nâch sînem spileman.
after his minstrel.

einer frouden her began,
a joy he began,

des her was berâten.
of-which he was provided.

her gebôt daz si tâten
he commanded that they should-do

ir trôische spil
their Trojan play

seltsâne unde vil,
strange and much,

des man dâ niht enphlach.
of-which one there not took-care.

daz hôrde gerne und gesach
that heard gladly and saw

der kunich Êvander
the king Evander

und manich man ander.
and many-a man other.

dô wart uber al geboten,
then was over all commanded,

daz si opherden ir goten
that they should-offer to-their gods

zêren und ze holden,
to-honor and to favor,

daz si in des solden
that they to-them of-it should

helfen unde gunnen,‘
help and grant,‘

daz si zir wunnen
that they to-their joys

sô seltsâner spile
so strange plays

vernomen haten alsô vile.
heard had so many.

Dô der kunich frô was,
When the king glad was,

dô frowete sich Ênêas
then rejoiced himself Aeneas

der wol gezogene Troiân.
the well bred Trojan.

dô sie heten getân
when they had done

ir spil nâch ir siten,
their play after their customs,

zû der borch si dô riten
to the castle they then rode

der kunich unde Ênêas,
the king and Aeneas,

sament in der junge Pallas
together-with them the young Pallas

mit ir mannen ensamen.
with their men together.

do genande Êvander mit namen
then named Evander by name

Ênêam sînen gast.
Aeneas his guest.

,dannoch was diu borch unvast,
,still was the castle unfirm,

sint stunt Rôme an der stat.
since stood Rome in the place.

der kunech Êvander dô bat
the king Evander then asked

Ênêam den Troiân,
Aeneas the Trojan,

dem her êre hete getân,
to-whom he honor had done,

daz her im sagete mâre,
that he to-him should-tell tidings,

wie daz komen wâre,
how that come were,

daz man Troie mohte gewinnen,
that one Troy might win,

sô vile sô sie dar inne
so many as they there in

heten gûter knehte.
had of-good knights.

dô sageterz ime rehte
then told-he-it to-him rightly

unde wiez von êrist quam
and how-it at first came

und wiez allez ende nam
and how-it all end took

al die rehten wârheit.
all the right truth.

der kunich in die borch reit.
the king into the castle rode.

Dô reit der kunich edele
Then rode the king noble

ze sînem ansedele.
to his seat.

dô schûf man dem helide
then made one for-the hero

herberge unde selide
lodging and dwelling

und schûf in allen ir gemach,
and made for-them all their ease,

daz in nihtes gebrach
that to-them of-naught lacked

Ênêases holden,
Aeneas's liegemen,

swaz sô si eischen wolden.
whatever so they ask would.

Êvander dô sande
Evander then sent

boten after lande,
messengers throughout land,

uber tach und uber naht.
over day and over night.

her tet des her was bedaht
he did what he was minded

und hiez sagen mâre,
and bade tell tidings,

waz sîn wille wâre,
what his will were,

daz sîn sun Pallas
that his son Pallas

der im vile lieb was
who to-him very dear was

gewâfen nemen solde.
arms take should.

swer ritter werden wolde,
whoever knight become would,

daz her ze hove quâme
that he to court should-come

undez von im nâme
and-it from him should-take

ros gewant unde schat.
horse clothing and treasure.

dô sie vernâmen dat,
when they heard that,

dô quam dar vil manich man.
then came there very many-a man.

grôzen hof her dô gewan.
great court he then won.

Dô der werlde alsô vile
When of-the world so much
ze grôzen frouden unde spile
to great joys and play
zû des kuneges hove quam,
to the king's court came,
dô teter alsim wol gezam.
then did-he as-to-him well befitted.
her gab mit williger hant
he gave with willing hand
ros schaz unde gewant
horses treasure and clothing
Êvander der rîche.
Evander the rich.
dô wart hêrlîche
then became lordly
ritter sîn sun Pallas,
knight his son Pallas,
als daz wole reht was.
as that well right was.
des ne wundert mich niet;
at-that — wonders me not;
daz in sîn vater wol beriet
that him his father well provided
mit gewâfen unde mit gewande.
with weapons and with clothing.
mit Ênêase her in sande
with Aeneas he him sent
mit zehen tûsent mannen
with ten thousand men
mit funfzich schiffen dannen
with fifty ships thence
Êvander der wîse.
Evander the wise.

her gab in gnûch spîse
he gave to-them enough food

als vile sô si ir wolden,
as much as they of-it would,

ob si dâ varen solden
if they there fare should

ze anderhalbem jâre,
for one-and-a-half year,

ob es nôt wâre.
if it need were.

The First Assault on Montalbane

XXVIII

Turnus hears that Aeneas has fled and besieges Montalbane, but the Trojans, heartened by young Ascanius, hold their towers. He drives his shield-bearers into an assault on the ditches, where they are slaughtered and left for the ravens. In anger he burns the Trojan ships on the Tiber, then feasts with his host until all lie drunk. On the gate watch Aeneas has set Nisus and Euryalus, two inseparable friends.

Die wîle daz Ênêas
The while that Aeneas

an der verte dâ was,
on the journey there was,

ê danner wider mohte komen,
ere than-he back might come,

sô hetez Turnûs vernomen.
so had-it Turnus heard.

im was gesaget mâre,
to-him was told tidings,

daz her entrunnen wâre,
that he escaped were,

des was der hêre vil unfrô.
of-that was the lord very unglad.

iedoch ne was ez niht sô,
yet — was it not so,

alsim dâ gesaget was,
as-to-him there told was,

daz der hêre Ênêas
that the lord Aeneas

der lobebâre wîgant,
the praiseworthy warrior,

gerûmet hete daz lant
left had the land

dorch vorhte oder dorch nôt.
for fear or for distress.

uber al daz here her gebôt,
over all the host he commanded,

daz man die borch besâze.
that one the castle should-besiege.

ê danner iht âze
ere than-he aught should-eat

wânder sie gewinnen.
weened-he it to-win.

dâ was aber innen
there was but within

manich werehaft man,
many-a warlike man,

die hûten daz hers niht gewan,
who guarded that he-it not won,

wand si gerne genâsen.
for they gladly should-survive.

ir horen hiezens blâsen:
their horns bade-they blow:

grôz gerûfte dâ wart.
great clamor there became.

dô sich hûb an die vart
when himself raised on the journey

Turnûs der rîche.
Turnus the rich.

harde manlîche
very manfully

vienk her daz dink ane.
seized he the thing on.

manich zeichen unde vane
many-a sign and banner

wart dâ an gebunden
was there on bound

in vil korzen stunden;
in very short hours;

gerne tâten sie daz.
gladly did they that.

Turnûs die borch besaz,
Turnus the castle besieged,

si riten vaste an den graben.
they rode fast to the ditch.

dâ wart ein michel strît erhaben,
there was a great battle raised,

si schozzen vaste mit den bogen.
they shot fast with the bows.

ir brucke heten si ûf gezogen,
their bridge had they up drawn,

als in Ênêas geriet,
as them Aeneas counseled,

ir nehein quam dar vor niet,
of-them none came there before at-all,

sie besazten dar inne
they manned there within

ir torne unde ir zinne.
their towers and their battlements.

ir dach si abe brâchen,
their roof they off broke,

ir vanen si ûf stâchen
their banners they up stuck

unde schûfen ir were
and made their defenses

engegen dem creftigen here.
against the mighty host.

Dô die Troiâne
When the Trojans

ûf Montalbâne
on Montalbane

wâren besezzen,
were besieged,

die helide vermezzen
the heroes bold

wâren wol berâten.
were well provided.

si schûfen unde tâten
they arranged and did

des si dô bedorhten.
what they then needed.

ein teil sie in vorhten,
a part they for-themselves feared,

wandir hêre Ênêas
for-their lord Aeneas

dâ mit in niene was,
there with them not-at-all was,

der in dâ lieb wâre.
who to-them there dear were.

Turnûs der mâre
Turnus the famous

grôzen schaden her gewan.
great harm he won.

si behielden alse gûte man
they kept as good men

ir hêren sîn hûs.
for-their lord his house.

dô greif der junge Ascânjûs
then gripped the young Ascanius

harde fromechlîchen zû
very valiantly to

beidiu spâte unde frû:
both late and early:

her trôste sînes vater man.
he comforted his father's men.

grôzen lob her dâ gewan.
great praise he there won.

Turnûs der helt balt,
Turnus the hero bold,

dô her die borch mit gewalt
when he the castle with force

gewinnen niene mohte
win not-at-all might

als im selben tohte
as to-him self suited

âne grôze arbeit,
without great hardship,

dicke her derumbe reit.
often he there-about rode.

her was ein unfrô man,
he was an unglad man,

dô her si schouwen began:
when he it to-behold began:

betrogen het in sîn wân,
deceived had him his ween,

wan der berch was sô getân,
for the hill was so made,

sô veste und sô werehaht,
so firm and so defensible,
des her hete gedaht,
what he had thought,
des ne mohte niht geschehen.
that — might not happen.
den berch hete wol besehen
the hill had well looked-at
der Troiâre Ênêas,
the Trojan Aeneas,
daz̨ her vile veste was,
that it very firm was,
dâ hern het bevangen.
where he-it had encompassed.
storm unde mangen
assault and mangonels
die ne vorhter niht ein blat.
them — feared-he not a leaf.
niewan an einiger stat,
except in one place,
als man mohte schouwen,
as one might behold,
dâ heten sie dorhouwen
there had they hewn-through
tiefe graben und wîte
deep ditches and wide
in vil korzer zîte,
in very short time,
sint daz̨ sis begonden,
since that they-it began,
wande siz̨ wol konden.
for they-it well could.
ez̨ meisterde Ênêas.
it devised Aeneas.

der nidere grabe der was
the lower ditch it was

harde wît unde tief.
very wide and deep.

ein wazzer dar inne lief,
a water there in ran,

daz von den brunnen nider flôz.
which from the springs down flowed.

daz ne was niht grôz,
that — was not great,

ez vlôz von der borch her abe.
it flowed from the castle hither down.

dâ ûzen was ein ander grabe,
there outside was an other ditch,

der sô grôz niene was,
which so great not-at-all was,

den hete der hêre Ênêas
which had the lord Aeneas

gemeisteret dâ bevoren.
devised there before.

des hete Turnûs grôzen zoren.
of-that had Turnus great wrath.

des erbalch sich der wîgant,
of-that angered himself the warrior,

daz her dâ niht envant
that he there not found

dehein unveste stat.
any unfirm place.

die schiltknehte her dô bat,
the shield-bearers he then bade,

daz si ze storme wolden gân,
that they to assault would go,

daz was doch angestlîch getân.
that was yet fearfully done.

Turnûs tet unrehte,
Turnus did wrongly,

daz her die schiltknehte
that he the shield-bearers

zû deme storme treib,
to the assault drove,

dâ ir vile tôt beleib,
where of-them many dead remained,

wandez enhalf niht ein bast,
for-it helped not a bast,

want der grabe was sô vast.
for the ditch was so firm.

von diu lâgen sie dâ tôt,
from that lay they there dead,

dô si tâten daz her gebôt,
when they did what he commanded,

âne mâze und âne zale.
without measure and without number.

die dâ sprungen ze tale
those-who there sprang to valley

in den graben hin nider,
into the ditch thither down,

der quam lutzel lebende wider:
of-them came little living back:

si worden meistich erslagen.
they were mostly slain.

solde man schiltknehte klagen,
should one shield-bearers lament,

sô moht dâ michel jâmer wesen,
so might there great misery be,

wand sin mohten niht genesen
for they might not survive

mit deheinem dinge.
with any thing.

der grabe was tief und enge,
the ditch was deep and narrow,

dâ si zû drungen.
where they to thronged.

die dô dar in sprungen
those-who then there in sprang

die wordens lîbes âne,
they became of-life bereft,

want die Troiâne,
for the Trojans,

die an den zinnen wâren
who on the battlements were

und ûf den arkâren,
and on the bays,

sine sparden ir deheinen,
they spared of-them none,

si queleten sie mit steinen.
they tormented them with stones.

eislîche si schozzen.
dreadfully they shot.

vil ubel es die genozzen,
very ill of-it those enjoyed,

die dâ ze storme giengen,
who there to assault went,

wand sie den tôt enphiengen.
for they the death received.

Dô ir dâ vile tôt lach,
When of-them there many dead lay,

undez Turnûs gesach,
and-it Turnus saw,

daz ir lutzel genas
that of-them little survived

und der schade alze grôz was
and the harm all-too great was

vil manegem ze sêren,
very to-many too sorely,

her hiez si dannen kêren.
he bade them thence turn.

des wart her dâ ze râte.
of-that became he there to counsel.

ez was idoch ze spâte,
it was yet too late,

daz hers niht was ê bedaht;
that he-of-it not was before minded;

wan si wâren unzalaht
for they were numberless

die dâ lâgen erslagen.
who there lay slain.

die ne mohte nieman dannen tragen,
them — might no-one thence carry,

die beliben in dem graben:
they remained in the ditch:

si âzen gîren unde raben
them ate vultures and ravens

und swaz si ezzen wolde.
and whatever them eat would.

si heten sêre vergolden
they had sorely paid-for

den aller êristen storm.
the very first assault.

si masten manegen grôzen worm
they fattened many-a great worm

mit fleische und mit blûte.
with flesh and with blood.

dô wart des zû mûte
then became of-it in mind

Turnô daz her dannen reit.
to-Turnus that he thence rode.

her hete michel arbeit
he had great hardship

und lûte dâ vil verloren.
and people there many lost.

daz was Turnô vile zoren.
that was to-Turnus very wroth.

Dô Turnûs solde dannen
When Turnus should thence

varen mit sînen mannen
fare with his men

hin ze herbergen
thither to lodgings

und sie die halsberge
and they the hauberks

sumelîche heten ûz getân,
some had off done,

dô gesach her schif stân
then saw he ships stand

in der Tiber dâ nider.
in the Tiber there below.

vil drâte rander hine wider
very swiftly ran-he thither back

mit zorenlîchen dingen.
with wrathful things.

daz fûre hiezer bringen
the fire bade-he bring

(der stat ne was dâ niht hôch):
(the bank — was there not high):

her schûf daz man diu schif zôch
he brought-about that one the ships drew

ûz dem wazzer an daz lant,
out-of the water onto the land,

und worden schiere verbrant:
and were quickly burned:

Dô sprach der hêre Turnûs
Then spoke the lord Turnus

‚heten si dorf oder hûs
‚had they village or house

ienre in diseme rîche,
anywhere in this realm,

diu woldich wârlîche
them would-I truly

verwôsten mit fûre.
lay-waste with fire.

in wirdet vile tûre,
to-them becomes very dear,

den schalken, des si hânt gedaht,
to-the rogues, what they have thought,

daz si mit schiffen bî der naht
that they with ships by the night

hine entrinnen wolden,
away escape would,

Ênêases holden,
Aeneas's liegemen,

als ir hêre hât getân,
as their lord has done,

der ungetrouwe Troiân.
the faithless Trojan.

diu vart is in undernomen,
the journey is to-them cut-off,

sine mogen hinnen niht komen
they may hence not come

lebende und ungevangen:
living and uncaught:

si werdent alle erhangen
they become all hanged

oder gemartert, sal ich leben.
or tortured, (if)-shall I live.

ich wil in daz lôn geben,
I will to-them the reward give,

daz si habent hûte
which they have today

verdient umb unser lûte.‘
earned for our people.‘

dô Turnûs der wîgant
when Turnus the warrior

diu schif hete verbrant
the ships had burned

der helt kûne unde gemeit
the hero bold and glad

und er hine wider reit
and he thither back rode

zû sînem gezelde,
to his tent,

do gesach her an dem velde
then saw he on the field

manech gezelt wol getân,
many-a tent well made,

dâ bî manege hutten stân
there by many-a hut stand

allenthalben in dem lande.
on-all-sides in the land.

vil manich fûre dâ brande,
very many-a fire there burned,

dâ daz mâre here lach.
where the famous host lay.

swaz der ritter her gesach,
whatever of-the knights he saw,

die her dare hete braht,
whom he thither had brought,

den bôt her allen gûte naht.
to-them offered he all good night.

minnechlîche er zûzin sprach
lovingly he to-them spoke

und hiez si scaffen ir gemach,
and bade them make their ease,

daz si ouch gerne tâten.
which they also gladly did.

si wâren wol berâten
they were well provided

nâch rîcher lûte wîse.
after rich people's manner.

si heten genûch spîse
they had enough food

mit in allen dare braht.
with them all thither brought.

vil nâ zû der mitter naht
very near to the mid night

si trunken unde âzen
they drank and ate

ir leides sie vergâzen,
of-their sorrow they forgot,

sie bliesen unde sungen,
they blew and sang,

si spilden unde sprungen
they played and leapt

und wachten unde riefen,
and watched and cried,

unze daz si ensliefen
until that they fell-asleep

und alle trunken lâgen,
and all drunk lay,

sine hôrden noch ensâgen.
they heard nor saw.

Dô daz alsô komen was,
When that so come was,

dô het der hêre Ênêas
then had the lord Aeneas

der sâlige Troiân
the blessed Trojan

uber die porten getân
over the gates done

zwêne ritter die ir phlâgen.
two knights who of-them took-care.

dô jene trunken lâgen,
when those drunk lay,

daz markten si rehte,
that marked they rightly,

si wâren gûte knehte,
they were good knights,

der kûne Eurîâlûs
the bold Euryalus

und der fromige Nîsûs
and the valiant Nisus

der vil liebe geselle sîn.
the very dear comrade his.

daz wart dicke wole schîn,
that became often well seen,

daz si geliebe wâren:
that they dear-to-each-other were:

in alsô vile jâren,
in so many years,

sô si wâren ensamen,
as they were together,

niht wan ein der namen
naught but in the names

wâren sie gescheiden:
were they parted:

wan si dûhte beide,
for they seemed both,

daz si ein lîb wâren.
that they one body were.

under allen den Troiâren
among all the Trojans

ne hete man niht funden
— had one not found

zû den selben stunden
at the same hours

zwêne kûne jungelinge,
two bold younglings,

die ze grôzeme dinge
who to great thing

baz konden gerâten.
better could counsel.

vernemet wie si tâten.
hear how they did.

Nisus and Euryalus

XXIX

Nisus resolves to slip through the drunken camp, and Euryalus insists on going with him. They take leave of Ascanius and kill two hundred sleepers, among them the soothsayer Rhamnes. Euryalus takes a gleaming helmet from Messapus's tent. Count Volcens's troop sights them, and the helmet betrays Euryalus, who is caught and beheaded. Nisus avenges him, kills four of Volcens's men, and is slain. Their heads are hung on a gallows before the gate, and the Trojans mourn them.

Dô quam dem helide Nîsen
Then came to-the hero Nisus

dem fromigen und dem wîsen
the valiant and the wise

grôz gedank in sînen mût,
great thought into his spirit,

wander was ein ritter gût,
for-he was a knight good,

edile unde hêre
noble and lordly

und het umb die êre
and had for the honor

dikke gerne ungemach.
often gladly discomfort.

zû sîme gesellen her sprach
to his comrade he spoke

‚geselle, vil lieber man,
‚comrade, very dear man,

daz ich weiz und daz ich kan
what I know and what I can

daz kanst ouch dû unde weist.
that canst also thou and knowest.

wir sîn ein lîb und ein geist
we are one body and one spirit

mit willen und mit werken.
with will and with works.

dû salt daz rehte merken,
thou shalt that rightly mark,

daz ich gemerket hân nû
what I marked have now

(daz gesehen wir wol ich unde dû)
(that see we well I and thou)

umb die herelûte,
about the host-people,

die wâren mûde hûte,
who were weary today,

daz schînt wol an in allen.
that shows well on them all.

nû sint si nider gevallen
now are they down fallen

trunken unde enslâfen.
drunk and asleep.

der wîn und diu wâfen
the wine and the weapons

hânt in benomen ir maht
have from-them taken their might

unde hânt si dar zû braht,
and have them there to brought,

daz sie niht enmogen
that they naught may

noch ze storme niht mê togen.
nor to assault not more avail.

der nû under si wolde gân,
he-who now among them would go,

der mohte ir harde vile erslân.
he might of-them very many slay.

ich sage dir wes ich hân gedaht:
I tell thee what I have thought:

daz ich an dirre naht
that I in this night

underz here strîche
among-the host should-slip

vil geswâslîche. 6590
very secretly.

und wil in schaden swaz ich mach.
and will to-them harm whatever I may.

ê dannez immer werde tach,
ere than-it ever should-become day,

sô kome ich her wider in,
so come I hither back in,

is daz ich lebendich bin.‘
(if)-is that I living am.‘

Dô daz geredete Nîsûs, 6595
When that spoke Nisus,

dô antworde ime Eurîâlûs
then answered to-him Euryalus

‚war umbe sprechet ir daz?
‚*where fore speak you that?*

ir solt ûch verdenken baz,
you shall yourself bethink better,

mich dunket daz ir missetût.
to-me seems that you misdo.

wir sîn ein fleisch und ein blût 6600
we are one flesh and one blood

(sprach her), liebe frunt mîn,
(spoke he), dear friend mine,

ichn weiz wie daz mohte sîn,
I-not know how that might be,

wie wir daz ane geviengen,
how we that at should-begin,

daz wir halbe hin ûz giengen
that we half thither out should-go
und halbe beliben hie inne.
and half should-remain here within.
daz dûhte mich unminne.
that seemed to-me unlove.
nû uns got hât ein lîb gegeben,
now to-us God has one body given,
wir soln beide ensament leben
we shall both together live
und ouch ensament sterben.
and also together die.
wir soln daz beide werben,
we shall that both pursue,
daz dunket mich baz getân,
that seems to-me better done,
unde solen danne gân,
and shall then go,
daz wir mînen hêren venden.
that we my lord should-find.
wil uns got dare senden,
(if)-will us God thither send,
her minnet uns deste baz.‘
he loves us the better.‘
dô her gesprochen hete daz
when he spoken had that
Eurîâlûs der wîse,
Euryalus the wise,
dô antworde ime Nîse
then answered to-him Nisus
‚ez is mir lieb daz ir ez tût
‚*it is to-me dear that you it do*
unde dunket mich gût
and seems to-me good

unde bin ich es vile frô.
and am I of-it very glad.

ich ne meinde ez niht sô,
I — meant it not so,

daz ichz tûn wold eine:
that I-it do would alone:

ir redet als ichz meine,
you speak as I-it mean,

ichn wolde dar niht eine varen,
I would thither not alone fare,

ich wil daz gerne bewaren,
I will that gladly guard,

daz ich von û iht scheide.‘
that I from you not should-part.‘

dô giengen si beide
then went they both

zû den selben stunden
at the same hours

dâ si Ascânjum funden,
where they Ascanius found,

ir hêren Ênêases sun,
their lord Aeneas's son,

und sagten im waz si wolden tûn
and told to-him what they would do

und dorch waz si quâmen.
and for what they came.

urloub sie zim nâmen
leave they of-him took

und ze den hûsgenôzen
and of the house-fellows

luzeln unde grôzen
small and great

und giengen von der borch nider.
and went from the castle down.

sine quâmen nimmer mêre wider.
they came never more back.

Welt ir hôren vore baz,
(If)-will you hear forward further,

sô mogen wir û sagen daz
so may we to-you tell that

wie sie ez ane viengen,
how they it at began,

dô si von der borch giengen.
when they from the castle went.

si wâren helide lussam.
they were heroes lovely.

ir iewederre nam
of-them each took

einen îsenînen hût
an iron hat

unde zwei swert gût,
and two swords good,

ir gêre sie nâmen.
their spears they took.

do si underz here quâmen,
when they among-the host came,

irn wart dâ nieman gewar.
of-them became there no-one aware.

ir swert heten sie bar,
their swords had they bare,

diu si in den handen trûgen.
which they in the hands bore.

der lûte si vil erslûgen
of-the people they many slew

slâfende unde âne were.
sleeping and without defense.

si tâten wunder in dem here.
they did wonders in the host.

in vil korzen stunden
in very short hours

machten sie manegen wunden,
made they many-a wounded-one,

der niemer mêre genas:
who never more recovered:

wol zwei hundert ir was.
well two hundred of-them was.

flîẓech wâren sie des.
zealous were they of-it.

dô quâmen sie dâ Ramnes
then came they where Rhamnes

der gûte wîssage lach
the good soothsayer lay

(Nîsûs in wol besach):
(Nisus him well looked-at):

der was vile rîche
he was very rich

unde lach hêrlîche
and lay lordly

der wârsage wîse,
the soothsayer wise,

unsanfte erwacte in Nîse,
ungently awoke him Nisus,

anders danne ers gerde.
otherwise than he-it desired.

mit dem scharphen swerde
with the sharp sword

daẓ houbet her im abe scriet:
the head he to-him off cut:

daẓn heter vor gesaget niet.
that had-he before foretold not.

dâ was diu wîsheit al verloren.
there was the wisdom all lost.

her het des âbendes dâ bevoren
he had in-the evening there before

sô vil getrunken wînes,
so much drunk of-wine,

daz her selbe sînes
that he self of-himself

al betalle vergaz.
all wholly forgot.

iedoch heter gesaget daz
yet had-he foretold that

her in der wochen worde erslagen.
he in the week should-become slain.

ich hân in selden hôrt geclagen.
I have him seldom heard lamented.

Dô gienk Eurîâlûs
Then went Euryalus

in ein gezelt dâ Messâpus
into a tent where Messapus

lach mit sînen mannen.
lay with his men.

Nîsûs zôch in dannen,
Nisus drew him thence,

wande in nâhete der tach.
for to-them neared the day.

Eurîâlûs gesach
Euryalus saw

einen helm vil wol getân:
a helmet very well made:

dô her dannen solde gân,
when he thence should go,

her nam den helm an sîne hant,
he took the helmet in his hand,

ûf sîn houbet her in bant:
on his head he it bound:

daz wart im sint ze leide.
that became to-him since to sorrow.

dô giengen si beide
then went they both

dâ si grôzen schaden nâmen.
where they great harm took.

dô si ûz dem here quâmen,
when they out-of the host came,

dâ si schaden heten getân,
where they harm had done,

dô quam der hêre Volzân
then came the lord Volcens

von Laurente dar gevaren
from Laurentum thither fared

mit einer mâzlîchen schare.
with a moderate troop.

her fûrde wole hundert schilde.
he led well hundred shields.

dô si sie an deme gevilde
when they them on the field

gegen in komen gesâgen,
toward them come saw,

der grâve wolde sie frâgen
the count would them ask

von dem here mâre,
of the host tidings,

ob ûf der borch noch wâre
whether on the castle yet were

diu trôische diet.
the Trojan folk.

dem hêren antwordens niet,
to-the lord answered-they not,

ir sinne sie vergâzen,
their senses they forgot,

si kêrden von der strâzen,
they turned from the road,

si wolden fliehen in daz holz.
they would flee into the wood.

dô was dâ manich ritter stolz
then was there many-a knight proud

und genûge die si jageten.
and many who them chased.

niwan daz sie verzageten
except that they despaired

unde fliehen begunden,
and to-flee began,

in ne wâre zû den stunden
to-them — were at the hours

niht ubiles getân.
naught of-evil done.

Nîsûs der Troiân
Nisus the Trojan

der was sneller ein teil,
he was swifter a part,

doch heten si bêde unheil.
yet had they both misfortune.

Eurîâlûs was ouch snel genûch,
Euryalus was also swift enough,

wan der helm den her ûf trûch,
but the helmet which he up bore,

den sach man verre blîchen.
it saw one far gleam.

hern mohte niht gewîchen,
he might not escape,

man ensâge wole war her gienk,
unless-one should-see well whither he went,

dâ von quam daz man in vienk
there from came that one him caught

zû dem selben mâle.
at the same time.

dô viengen si Eurîâle.
then caught they Euryalus.

Dô daz was ergangen,
When that was happened,

daz der helt was gevangen
that the hero was caught

Eurîâlûs der Troiân,
Euryalus the Trojan,

dô wolden der grâve Volzân
then would-him the count Volcens

wider fûren zû dem here.
back lead to the host.

dâ wider ne mohter deheine were
there against — might-he no defense

getûn zû den stunden:
do at the hours:

si heten in gebunden.
they had him bound.

daz was Nîsô vile zoren,
that was to-Nisus very wrath,

daz her in sô solde hân verloren,
that he him so should have lost,

her wolde ê selbe blîben dâ.
he would rather self remain there.

mit listen quam her in sô nâ,
with cunning came he to-them so near,

sîn rouwe was vile grôz,
his rue was very great,

mit eime gêre her dorchschôz
with a spear he shot-through

einen des grâven man,
one of-the count's men,

sô daz her nimmer dan
so that he never thence

mit sîme lîbe quam:
with his body came:

sîn ende er dâ ze stete nam.
his end he there on-the spot took.

Dô sprach der grâve Volzân
Then spoke the count Volcens

‚ichn weiz wer diz hât getân,
‚I-not know who this has done,

der mînen man hie hât erslagen,
who my man here has slain,

den ich ubile mach verclagen,
whom I ill may get-over,

ez gêt dir an dîn leben.'
it goes to-thee on thy life.'

her hiez im einen slach geben.
he bade to-him a stroke give.

als der grâve gerde,
as the count desired,

mit eime scharphen swerde
with a sharp sword

daz houbet her im abe slûch.
the head he to-him off struck.

des wart rouwich genûch
of-that became rueful enough

Nîsûs dô her ez gesach.
Nisus when he it saw.

ez was der leidiste slach,
it was the most-sorrowful stroke,

den her gesach slahen ie.
which he saw strike ever.

gebâren enweste her wie:
to-bear-himself knew-not he how:

done wolder niht verholen wesen
then would-he not hidden be

noch âne in genesen.
nor without him survive.

her hete in gerne erlôst.
he had him gladly released.

des lîbes heter sich getrôst,
of-the body had-he himself given-up,

hern vorhte im neheinen teil,
he feared for-himself no part,

her liez daz leben an ein heil,
he let the life on a fortune,

als in der grôzę zoren dwank.
as him the great wrath constrained.

manlîche her her vore sprank,
manfully he hither forth sprang,

der wol gelobete wîgant.
the well praised warrior.

daz swert trûch her an der hant,
the sword bore he in the hand,

ez was stark unde gût.
it was strong and good.

ouch heter eines lêwen mût,
also had-he a lion's spirit,

daz mach man wole sprechen.
that may one well say.

sînen gesellen wolder rechen:
his comrade would-he avenge:

her erslûch vil schiere
he slew very quickly

des grâven manne viere,
of-the count's men four,

daz si tôt lâgen.
that they dead lay.

dô daz die andern sâgen,
when that the others saw,

daz her sô tobelîchen warb,
that he so madly strove,

wandern rûchte ob er starb
for-he-not cared if he died

und enwolde niht komen dane,
and would not come thence,

vaste liefen sie in ane
fast ran they him on

mit speren und mit swerden
with spears and with swords

die sîn alle gerden.
who of-him all desired.

ir frunt sie an ime râchen,
their friend they on him avenged,

si slûgen ûf in unde stâchen,
they struck on him and stabbed,

unze her dâ tôt lach.
until he there dead lay.

dô daz Volzân gesach,
when that Volcens saw,

daz sie dâ beide lâgen tôt,
that they there both lay dead,

sînen lûten her gebôt,
his people he commanded,

hern wolde sie niht scheiden:
he would them not part:

her gebôt daz man in beiden
he commanded that one to-them both

diu houbet abe slûge
the heads off should-strike

und si zû dem here trûge.
and them to the host should-carry.

daz hiez der grâve Volzân,
that bade the count Volcens,

daz was schiere getân.
that was quickly done.

Dô der grâve daz beriet,
When the count that arranged,

sint ne wolder dâ belîben niet,
since — would-he there remain not,

sîn lûte hiez er bâren
his people bade he lay-on-biers

die dâ erslagen wâren,
who there slain were,

beidiu tôt unde wunt.
both dead and wounded.

her reit dâ zer stunt
he rode there at-the hour

zû deme here dannen.
to the host thence.

her gebôt sînen mannen,
he commanded his men,

daz si diu houbet nâmen.
that they the heads took.

ê si in daz here quâmen,
ere they into the host came,

dô was ez sô verre tach,
then was it so far day,

daz man uber al gesach
that one over all saw

dâ die lâgen erslagen.
where those lay slain.

dâ was weinen unde clagen.
there was weeping and lamenting.

vile rouwich was diu diet,
very rueful was the folk,

wande sie ne westen niet,
for they — knew not,

wer daz hete getân,
who that had done,

ê der grâve Volzân
ere the count Volcens

mit sîner schare dar zû reit:
with his troop there to rode:

do erfunden sie die wârheit.
then found-out they the truth.

ich wil û sagen wie ez quam.
I will to-you tell how it came.

den helm den Eurîâlûs nam
the helmet which Euryalus took

in Messâpûs gezelde,
in Messapus's tent,

der quam ze hôhem gelde,
it came to high price,

des man luzel gedahte.
of-which one little thought.

do in Volzân wider brahte,
when him Volcens back brought,

dô erkande in Messâpûs
then knew him Messapus

und der hêre Turnûs.
and the lord Turnus.

ir lûte daz tihten,
their people that devised,

daz si in einen galgen rihten
that they to-them a gallows raised

an der porten dâ man zû gienk,
at the gate where one to went,

diu houbet man dar ane hienk.
the heads one there on hung.

Dô die Troiâre
When the Trojans

vernâmen daz mâre,
heard the tidings,

daz der hêre Nîsûs
that the lord Nisus

und sîn frunt Eurîâlûs
and his friend Euryalus

beide erslagen lâgen,
both slain lay,

und sie diu houbet sâgen
and they the heads saw

an dem galgen hangen hô,
on the gallows hang high,

dô was maneger unfrô.
then was many-a-one unglad.

si heten rouwe grôze
they had rue great

umbe ir hûsgenôze,
about their house-fellows,

die alsô wâren bliben tôt.
who so were remained dead.